



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

πH

HN 3Hw4 A

22477

THE  
BEGINNER'S  
CÆSAR



HARRISON D. CANNON

162 22 4777

DUPLICATE  
BROWN UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARY.

Elizabeth J. Wells  
Walnut Hill  
Matick, Mass.

Began May 1, 1906.



*An open door to Cæsar*

THE  
BEGINNER'S CÆSAR

BEING MAINLY THE SIMPLIFIED TEXT OF THE  
BELLUM HELVETICUM OF THE COMMENTARIES

BY  
HARRISON DICKINSON CANNON  
*Ph.B., Cornell University*

Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged



NEW YORK CITY  
HINDS AND NOBLE, PUBLISHERS  
31-33-35 WEST 15TH STREET  
1904

λ.22477



Copyright, 1900,  
By HARRISON D. CANNON.

---

Copyright, 1903,  
By HINDS AND NOBLE.

**TO MY DAUGHTER  
REGINA  
THIS BOOK IS  
LOVINGLY INSCRIBED**



## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

THIS book is the outcome of a close personal experience, both as pupil and teacher, of the difficulties attendant upon the initiation of classes in the reading of Cæsar.

The late report of the Committee of Twelve of the American Philological Association but verifies a matter of general repute among the profession in these words: "Some opposition has been made to the study of Cæsar as being too difficult for students in the second year of the course. *But to omit Cæsar would be a retrograde step in the framing of Latin programs.*" But despite the fact that they hereby state a truth of common knowledge, the words exert a new and powerful force by the prestige of the honorable members of that committee. Educational influences which come from such men as constituted that board are resistless on whatsoever they may be brought to bear. Lovers of the classics, and especially of the cause of Cæsar for the service it has so long performed, need have no anxiety. For those influences are now being directed full in favor of maintaining, nay in advancing, the classics as essential factors in the education of to-day. And statistics witness the success of these efforts for classicism. Figures show that in the last nine years, 1890-'99, the study of Latin "has gained at a rate greater than that of any other secondary-school study." As a means of comparison, the report shows *in Latin an increase of 174 per cent, in German 131, in Greek 94, in Chemistry 65.* "It

is encouraging to friends of classical study to notice that in 1898 almost one-half (49.44 per cent) of all the pupils enrolled in the secondary-schools were engaged in the study of Latin."

From this it is clear that the question before us is not *what*, but *how*. Cæsar must remain. But how is it to be made easier for beginners? This book, embodying an analytic method in the interpretation of the text, is the author's answer to the question.

The Committee suggests that first-year classes read twenty to thirty pages of easy Latin toward the close of the year. It has been difficult for teachers to obtain such matter — at once easy and consecutive and pertinent to the immediate end in view. The aim of this book is to supply it. The treatment of the pupil during this transition is important. From now on his attention should be drawn closely to the systematic study of connected discourse, at first simple and concise, but gradually approaching and finally reaching the level of Cæsar's own. And in connection with this reading, the pupil is in a condition to profit by a thorough drill from the text in all the mechanism of word-forms — parts, conjugation, declension, comparison — syntax, translation at sight and hearing, and, above all, *reproduction of the Latin*, after the method which has come down to us from that most renowned teacher of his age, Johann Sturm of Strasburg. The lesson-book should be laid aside. It has done its work. With the teacher as a guide, the student needs no other print than the book now before him.

Attention need hardly be called to the striking feature of the work. By a careful method of analysis the reader

is led gradually and easily through the difficulties of Cæsar's complex constructions to the text, *toto in se*, of the Commentaries.

The author's one purpose is to join the multitude of lovers of classic literature in their effort to open the way more and more to the fountain-head of those forces that are still moulding the very life of the world.

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

THE success of the earlier edition of *The Beginner's Cæsar* warrants its reappearance in this new and enlarged form. Many extra features have been added, and original parts extended.

An examination of the text will justify the Author's choice of the motto — *repetitio mater est studiorum*. The pupil is led step by step through that which becomes familiar by repetition to the *verbatim* sentence of Cæsar.

Throughout the text are exegetical references to the appropriate rules and examples. These rules and examples the pupil should at once memorize. This done, he has not the foundation alone, but much of the superstructure of syntax of his entire future course in Latin.

The English-Latin composition consists of two parts, the one preferably for oral recitation, the other for careful written work. Both being based upon the text, they will require no special vocabulary. The one part may be found too easy for older classes, the other too difficult for younger pupils. Governed by the needs of the class, the tactful teacher will find the golden mean.

The *Notes* are intentionally full. The purpose has been constantly in mind to make them interesting and attractive and thus stimulating. Through them, supplemented by pleasing fact and anecdote from the teacher's fund of information and experience, the pupil may be brought to the appreciation and enjoyment of classical study. Let

the class be attentive to these Notes every day. Then the habit of critical study will be formed, and from it will develop a facility of comprehension that will be productive of good to them in all they do. We vilify classical training in our condemnation of that which is classical in name only, not in spirit and method. If such study fail of its purpose of culture, the fault lies rather in manner than matter. To gain the full culture-value of the study of the classics, we must combine their historical treatment with *thorough* drill in construction and syntax. The one vivifies the past, making it real as the living present; the other sharpens the mental faculties, making us more the man. The one makes for refinement, the other for discipline — a combination which renders the classics the best mould of life in our school-rooms to-day.

Thanks are due Professors Burr and De Garmo of Cornell University, J. Edward Banta, Superintendent of the Binghamton city schools, Frank D. Blodgett of the chair of Latin and Greek in the State Normal School of Oneonta, New York, and to the many High School and Academic teachers everywhere, — all of whom have spoken of the book in the heartiest and kindliest manner and thus lent encouragement to this larger work, — to all these the Author wishes to extend his most sincere gratitude.

To Mr. Archibald A. Maclardy, the author of "The Completely Parsed Cicero and Virgil," I wish to publicly express my appreciation of the professional service rendered me. His critical examination of the first edition of my book, and his helpful and encouraging suggestions, have done much toward this revision.

To my Publishers, too, who have given me full rein,

who have made absolutely no restrictions, in the enjoyment of which unusual privilege I have inserted every sort of matter of interest, value, and convenience that any teacher can reasonably ask, my thanks and the thanks of all educators are due.

May old friends recognize "The Beginner's Cæsar" in its new dress, and new friends receive it kindly.

HARRISON DICKINSON CANNON.

SEPTEMBER 1, 1903.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
I. INTRODUCTION: CÆSAR IN GAUL . . . . .	xiii
II. OUTLINE OF CÆSAR'S LIFE . . . . .	xvii
III. MAP OF GAUL . . . . .	xxi
IV. SIMPLIFIED AND VERBATIM TEXT OF THE "BEL- LUM HELVETICUM," CHAPTERS I-XXIX . . . . .	1-48
V. ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES . . . . .	49
VI. RULES OF SYNTAX . . . . .	75
VII. NOTES . . . . .	101
VIII. TABLES OF DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION . . . . .	135
IX. VOCABULARY . . . . .	167



## CÆSAR IN GAUL

To the student of Cæsar, the politician, there is much in his life previous to his proconsular appointment to Gaul that is of essential value. In fact, in this first half of that great man's life, the student will find his greatest interest, if he aims to know the rungs in that ladder of ambition by which he climbed to the highest honor in the power of the Roman Republic to bestow.

To the student of Cæsar, the general and writer of the "Commentaries," Plutarch gives the cue when he says that with his work in Gaul Cæsar began a new life, following lines of action different from the old. With the beginning of this changed activity, in this second act, as it were, of his play of life, we find our interest as readers of the Gallic wars.

By the *lex Vatinia*, the people gave to Cæsar, in B. C. 58, the government of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum for five years, with three legions. The Senate immediately added Transalpine Gaul and another legion. Scarcely had he completed arrangements for departure, when word was brought to him of disturbances among the tribes in the eastern portion, now Switzerland. It was the middle of March. Cæsar set out instantly. By the first of April, B. C. 58, he had begun his marvelous military career, and by the following June had won his first campaign. The story of this achievement is given in the first twenty-nine

chapters of Book I, the simplified and *verbatim* text of which the student is now about to read. This first campaign is called the "Helvetian War," from the name of the nation which occasioned it. Its details the student will best gather from the careful perusal of Cæsar's account.

A considerable part of the subsequent history of Cæsar in Gaul will be read in the pupil's future course. During those eight years, he took eight hundred cities by assault, conquered three hundred tribes, and fought pitched battles at different times with three millions of men, two-thirds of whom were either killed or sold into slavery. His was pioneer work for Rome in the northwest; for his army was the first to penetrate Gaul and Britain, to cross into the German wilds, to sail the Atlantic—and the dash and daring of it all wrought such fear in the barbarians that they kept aloof from Rome for centuries.

As we peruse the account of his first campaign, we shall begin to feel the ability, energy, and tact of the man, which feeling will grow, as we read on, into a full sense of his gigantic genius. Then with his admirers in all ages and nations we shall join in sincere homage. As a warrior and a general we shall behold him not in the least inferior to the greatest commanders the world has ever produced; for, whether we compare him with the leaders of the past or the present, he bears away the palm. "In the difficulty of the scenes of action, in the extent of the countries subdued, in the number and strength of the enemies overcome, in the savage manners and treacherous disposition of the people he humanized, in mildness and clemency to his prisoners, in bounty and munificence to his troops, in the

number of battles won and enemies killed," finally, in all that tests the skill and fearlessness of a military commander, Cæsar stands at the head of the famous warriors of all time.

However, it is but as a wondrous warrior — not a man — that we admire him; for in every act we cannot but feel the covert purpose to become master of Rome at whatever cost, to "bestride the narrow world like a Colossus," then to be oblivious to the petty men beneath his huge legs, as *Cassius* expresses it in the play. Try as we may to evade it, the thought intrudes itself upon us that in his favors and charity to the people and to his soldiers, and in mercy to his enemies, he was swayed more by reason than affection. Thus, mingling with our awe of his incredible power, which in a noble nature incarnated would turn our awe to love, comes the depressing consciousness that the Gallic campaigns were but links in the fetters. There is evidence of a reprehensible duplicity in Cæsar's conduct at this period: he was conquering his enemies with the arms of the Roman Republic, and gaining the Republic by the money of his enemies. His mind was always on state intrigues. During brief respites from active fighting, "great numbers came from Rome to pay their respects to him, and he sent them all away satisfied; some laden with presents, others happy in hope. He sent to Rome enormous sums of gold to be expended in the erection of temples, theatres, and other public structures, and in the celebration of games and shows, that should rival in magnificence those of Pompey" (*Plutarch and Myers*).

We cannot but regret that, unlike *Brutus*, Cæsar loved

Rome less and Cæsar more. Thus in his chequered life he found

“tears for his love; joy for his fortune; honor for his valor; and death for his ambition.”—(BRUTUS, in Shakespeare’s *Julius Cæsar*).

## OUTLINE OF CÆSAR'S LIFE\*

(ACCORDING TO PLUTARCH)

1. Born July 12, 100 B. C., of a patrician or noble family.
2. Priest of Jupiter (*Flamen Dialis*).
3. Alliance with Marius, leader of the popular party (*Populares*).
4. Further alliance with popular party by marriage with Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, B. C. 83.
5. Troubles with Sulla, leader of the patrician or aristocratic party (*Optimates*). Proscribed.
6. Exile among the Sabines and across the sea; the incident of the pirates.
7. Studies rhetoric and oratory at Rhodes.
8. Returns to Rome and impeaches Dolabella, a rapacious provincial governor.
9. Military Tribune, B. C. 74.
10. Funeral oration of his aunt, the wife of Marius; restoration of the images of Marius against the ban.
11. Further hardiness and independence of spirit shown in his young wife's panegyrics.
12. Quæstor in Spain, B. C. 68.

\* The pupil should learn this outline, and from the many available sketches of Cæsar's life should expand the outline to a full account. Besides the encyclopædic articles every library should have a copy of Plutarch's "Lives"; Froude's "Cæsar, a sketch"; Dodge, in the "Series of Great Captains"; Fowler's "Julius Cæsar"; the histories of Merivale, Mommsen and Myers; various excellent school editions of the Commentaries; and above all, if possible, the elaborate work of Napoleon III.

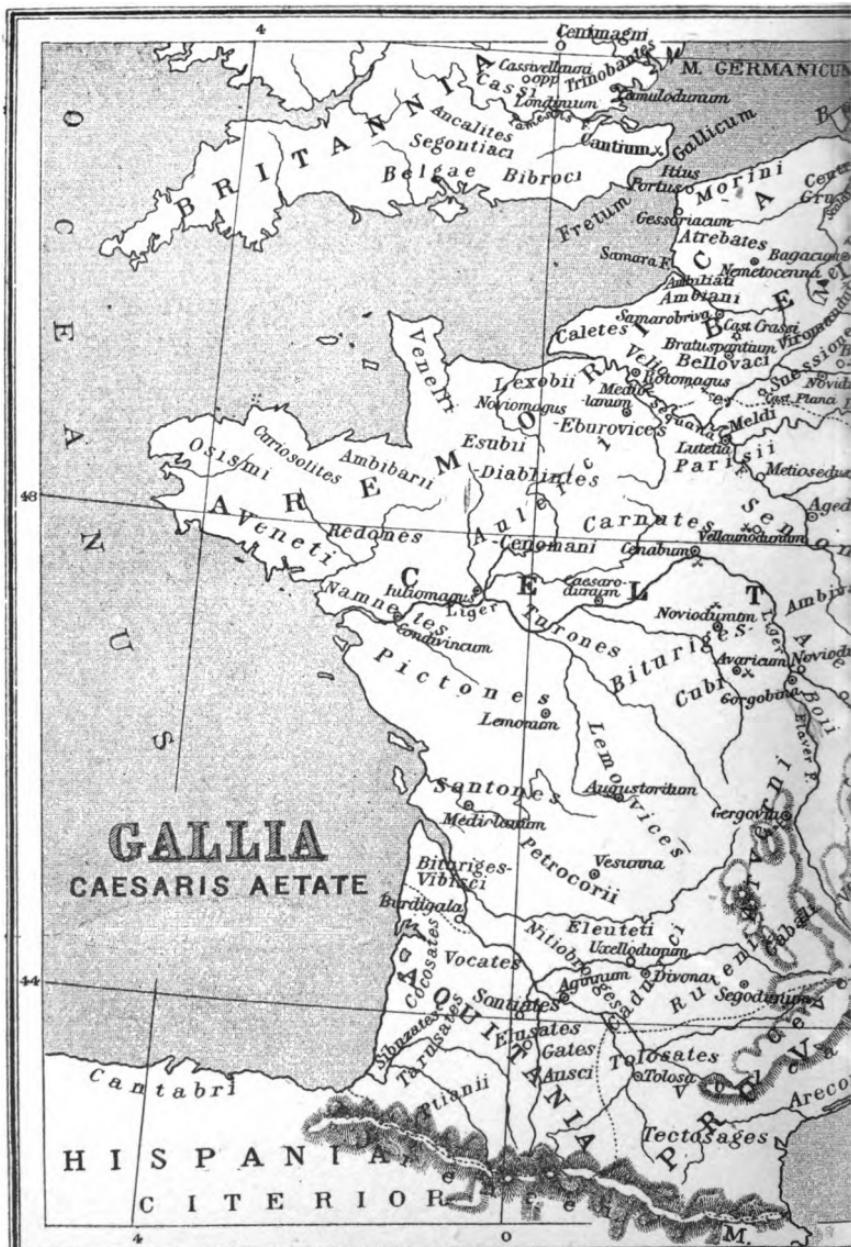
13. Curule Aedile, B. C. 65; his enormous personal expenditures and debts; the incident of the new gold-embossed and engraved statues and trophies of Marius.
14. Contest for the pontificate; the proffered bribe; incident of Cæsar and his mother.
15. Pontifex Maximus, B. C. 63.
16. Cæsar and the conspiracy of Catiline; the enmity of Cato; Cicero's body-guard; in the senate a few days later; Cato's artifice, B. C. 63.
17. Prætor, B. C. 62.
18. Domestic troubles; sacrilege of Clodius.
19. Proprætor in Spain, B. C. 61; his debts; alliance with Crassus; envies the achievements of Alexander the Great; beginning of his military career; wins the title of *imperator*.
20. Return to Italy; his dilemma; Cato's opposition, and result.
21. The Triumvirate, B. C. 60; purpose and result; Cato's wisdom and foresight.
22. Consul, B. C. 59; "Less a consul than a seditious tribune"; the incident of the trio in the Senate; how the laws were passed.
23. **Cæsar in Gaul, 58-50 B. C.** "Here we begin, as it were, a new life."
24. Pompey made "sole consul," B. C. 52; "Monarchy the only cure, Pompey the gentlest physician."
25. Cæsar asks for continuance of his commission in Gaul; deliberations in the Senate; Cæsar's liberal offer; outrage upon his envoys.
26. Meditation on the banks of the Rubicon; "The die is cast!" B. C. 49.

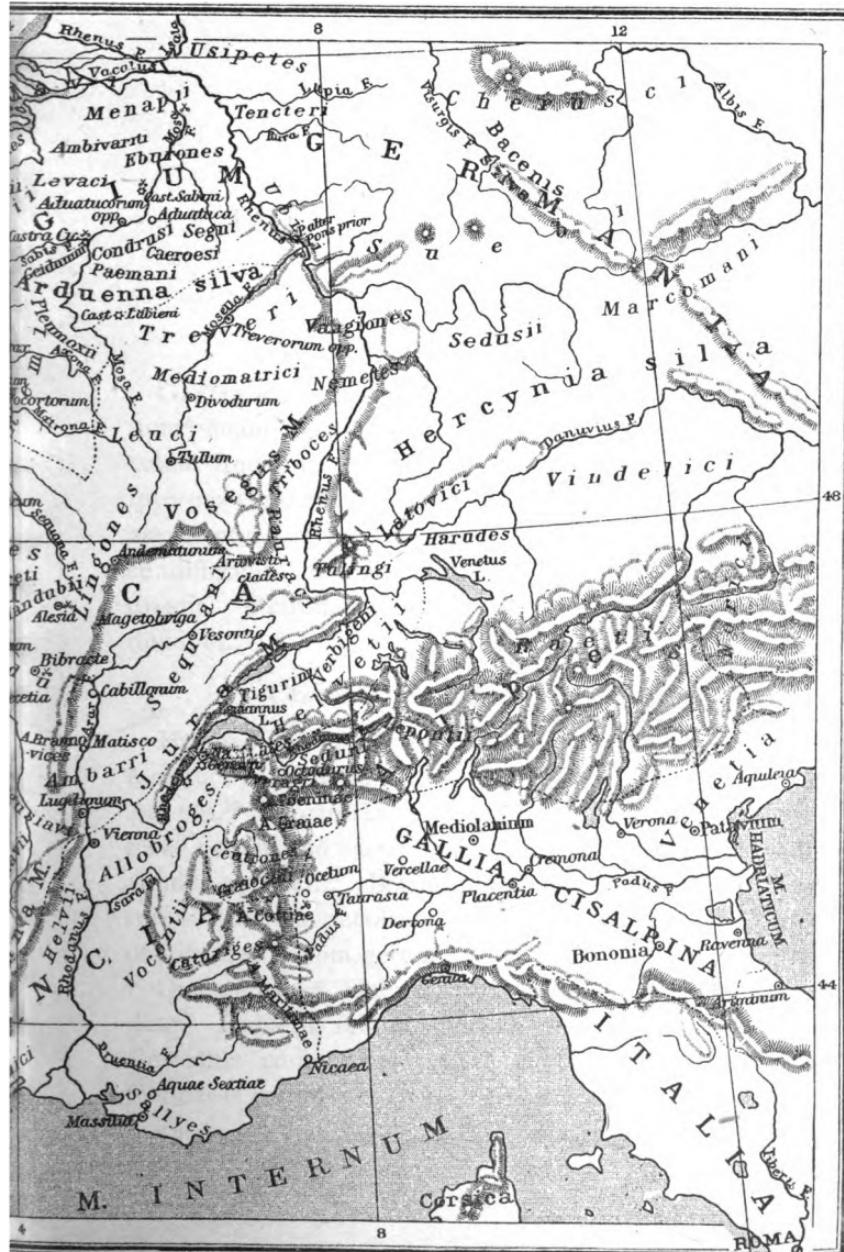
27. Civil war ; flight of Pompey and the consuls.
28. Conquers Pompey at Pharsalus, B. C. 48.
29. Cæsar in Egypt, B. C. 47.
30. Battle of Thapsus, B. C. 46.
31. Dictator for ten years, B. C. 46.
32. Battle of Munda, B. C. 45.
33. Imperator for life.
34. The conspiracy. Assassinated, March 15, B. C. 44.

“O mighty Cæsar ! dost thou lie so low ?  
Are all thy conquests, glories, triumphs, spoils,  
Shrunk to this little measure ? Fare thee well.”  
(MARK ANTONY over Cæsar's body).











# THE BEGINNER'S CÆSAR

---

## 1. THE DIVISIONS OF GAUL

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partēs trēs. Quārum partium<sup>5</sup> ūnam \* partem incolunt Belgae. Aliam partem incolunt Aquitāni. Tertiam incolunt Galli. Galli linguā<sup>38</sup> ipsōrum *Celtae*<sup>82</sup> appellantur. Celtae nostrā linguā *Gallī* appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īstitūtis, lēgibus<sup>38</sup> inter sē differunt. Garumna flūmen<sup>79</sup> Gallōs ab Aquitānīs<sup>95</sup> dividit. Mātrona et Sēquana flūmina<sup>79</sup> Gallōs ā Belgis dīvidunt.

### *Characteristics of the Gallic people*

Hōrum<sup>5</sup> omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū<sup>96</sup> atque hūmānitātē prōvinciae longissimē absunt. Ad eōs,<sup>35</sup> mercātōrēs minimē saepe commeant. Mercātōrēs ea minimē saepe important, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent. Belgae proximī<sup>78</sup> sunt Germānīs,<sup>19</sup> qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum (= cum quibus<sup>38</sup>) continenter bellum gerunt.

Quā dē causā, Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt. Helvētiī reliquōs virtūtē praecēdunt, quod cum Germānīs contendunt. Ferē cotidiānīs<sup>34</sup> proeliis cum Germānīs contendunt. Helvētiī suis finibus<sup>27</sup> Germānōs

\* The figures throughout the text refer to *Rules of Syntax*, beginning at page 75.

prohibent. Helvētiī in Germānōrum finibus<sup>59</sup> bellum gerunt.

*Boundaries of each nation*

Una pars eōrum initium capit ā<sup>60</sup> flūmine Rhodanō. Eam partem Gallōs<sup>61</sup> obtinēre<sup>62</sup> dictum est. Continētur Garumna<sup>63</sup> flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum. Attingit flūmen Rhēnum. Attingit etiam ab Sēquanis et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum. Vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmis finibus Galliae oriuntur. Pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēni. Spectant in septentriōnēm et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumna flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs<sup>64</sup> pertinet. Pertinet ad eam partem Ōceani, quae est ad Hispāniām.<sup>65</sup> Spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

**NOTE:** After each simplified chapter will follow a *verbatim* copy of the corresponding chapter from the "Commentaries."

C. IULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS

B. C. 58

I. Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Description of Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hī omnēs the divisions and inhabitants of Gaul. linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen, ā Belgis Mātrona et Sēquana dividit. Hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercā-

tōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximique sunt Germānis, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētii quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumna flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanis et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēni; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumna flūmine ad Pŷrēnaēos montēs et eam partem Ōceani quae est ad Hispāniām pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

---

## 2. CONSPIRACY OF ORGETORIX

Apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. Orgetorix fuit longē ditissimus. Is coniūrātiōnem nōbilitatis fēcit. Is, rēgni <sup>4</sup> cupiditāte <sup>50</sup> inductus, coniūrātiōnem fēcit. Is, Mārcō Messālā et M. Pisōne cōnsulibus, <sup>48</sup> civitāti <sup>12</sup> persuāsit ut <sup>48</sup> dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent. <sup>54</sup> Dīxit: perfacile esse, <sup>67</sup> tōtius Galliae imperiō <sup>55</sup> potiri. <sup>76</sup> Perfacile esse, imperiō potiri, cum virtūte <sup>58</sup> omnibus <sup>12</sup> praestārent. <sup>51</sup>

### *Natural limits of Helvetia*

Helvētii loci nātūrā undique continentur. Hōc <sup>59</sup> facilius eis persuāsit ut dē suis finibus exirent. Helvētii ūnā ex

parte<sup>40</sup> flūmine Rhēnō<sup>79</sup> continentur. Rhēnus lātissimus<sup>78</sup> et altissimus est. Is agrum Helvētium ā Germānis<sup>85</sup> dividit. Helvētii alterā ex parte monte Iūrā continentur. Iūra, mōns altissimus, inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs est. Helvētiī tertīā (ex parte) lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō continentur. Rhodanus prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit.

*The results of their confinement*

His rēbus<sup>29</sup> fiēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur.<sup>40</sup> His rēbus fiēbat ut minus facile finitimus<sup>18</sup> bellum inferre<sup>74</sup> possent. Helvētii cupidi<sup>82</sup> bellandi<sup>7</sup> erant. Quā ex parte Helvētiī, hominēs<sup>79</sup> bellandi cupidi, māgnō dolōre<sup>34</sup> afficiēbantur. *in way* Sē angustōs finēs habēre<sup>76</sup> arbitrābantur. Prō multitūdine hominum,<sup>6</sup> angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur. Prō glōriā belli atque fortitūdinis, finēs angustōs esse arbitrābantur. Finēs in longitūdinem milia<sup>23</sup> passuum<sup>6</sup> ducenta et quadrāgintā patēbant.<sup>96</sup> In lātitūdinem centum et octōgintā patēbant.



CHAPTER II OF CÆSAR'S TEXT

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditātē inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitatis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē finib⁹ suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praeſtarent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri. Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētii continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, qui agrum Hel-

Orgetorix  
persuades  
the Helve-  
tians to in-  
vade Gaul.

vētium ā Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertīā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit. His rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitīmī bellum īferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominū et prō glōriā belli atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

---

### 3. PREPARATIONS OF THE HELVETIANS

His rēbus adductī sunt. Auctōritāte Orgetorīgis<sup>3</sup> permōti sunt. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōti, cōnstituērunt ea comparāre,<sup>74</sup> quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent.<sup>50</sup> Cōnstituērunt māximum numerum iūmentōrum<sup>5</sup> coēmere.<sup>74</sup> Cōnstituērunt quam<sup>73</sup> māximum numerum carrōrum coēmere. Cōnstituērunt quam māxi-mās sēmentēs facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppteret. Cōnstituērunt pācem et amīcitiam cum proximis civitātibus cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās<sup>71</sup> biennium satis est. Biennium sibi<sup>18</sup> satis esse dūxērunt. In tertium annum<sup>25</sup> profectiōnem lēge<sup>32</sup> cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur.

*Orgetorīx enlists other chiefs*

Is sibi<sup>18</sup> lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs<sup>25</sup> suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō<sup>12</sup>, ut rēgnum in cīvitātē suā occu-pāret.<sup>48</sup> Casticus, Sēquānus,<sup>70</sup> filius Catamantāloedis erat.

Pater Castici rēgnū in Sēquanis multōs<sup>28</sup> annōs obtinuerat. Ā senātū<sup>29</sup> populi Rōmānī amīcus<sup>30</sup> appellātus erat. Rēgnū in Sēquanis pater Castici ante habuerat. Itemque, Orgetorix Dumnorīgi, qui plēbī<sup>19</sup> acceptus erat, persuāsit ut idem cōnārētur. Orgetorix ei<sup>11</sup> filiam suam in mātrīmōnium dat. Dumnorix Aeduus frāter<sup>32</sup> Divitiāci erat. Dumnorix eō tempore<sup>31</sup> principātūm in civitātē obtinēbat.

*His argument*

Cōnāta perficere<sup>76</sup> perfacile est. Illis<sup>11</sup> probat perfacile factū<sup>76</sup> esse cōnāta perficere. Perfacile esse probat, prop̄terā quod imperium suae cīvitātīs<sup>4</sup> obtentūrus esset.<sup>54</sup> Nōn esse<sup>67</sup> dubium quin<sup>30</sup> tōtius Galliae<sup>6</sup> Helvētī plūrīmum possent. Orgetorix cōfirmat sē rēgna conciliātūrum esse. Sē suis cōpiis suōque<sup>32</sup> exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum esse cōfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne<sup>33</sup> Casticus et Dumnorix adducti sunt. Hāc ōrātiōne adducti, inter sē fidem<sup>97</sup> et iūs iūrandū dant. Spērant sēsē tōtius<sup>35</sup> Galliae potiri posse. Rēgnō occupātō, sēsē tōtius Galliae potiri spērant. Per trēs potentissimōs ac fīrmīssimōs populōs, sēsē Galliae potiri posse spērant.

CHAPTER III OF CÆSAR

3. His rēbus adducti et auctōritātē Orgetorigis permōti cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent com-  
 parāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māxi-  
 mum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam mā-  
 ximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī sup-  
 peteret, cum proximīs cīvitātībus pācem et amīcītām cōn-  
 firmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennūm sibi satis esse dū-

Preparations  
of the Hel-  
vetians.

xērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. **V** In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquānō, cūius pater rēgnū in Sēquānis multōs annōs obtinērat et ā senātū populi Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnū in cīvitātē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduō, frātri Dīvījācī, qui eō tempore principātū in cīvitātē obtinēbat āc māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eique filiam suam in mātrimōnium dat. **V** Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium, quīn tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illis rēgnā conciliātūrum cōfirmāt. Hāc orātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandū dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant. **V**

Orgetorix  
conspires  
with chiefs  
of other  
tribes for su-  
premacy.



Miles

## BETRAYAL AND DEATH OF ORGETORIX

4. Orgetorix is betrayed and arrested. On the day of the trial he assembles all his retinue at the court and through them he escapes. The government, however, is persistent, and Orgetorix in despair commits suicide.

Ea rēs ēnūntiāta est. Rēs per indicium<sup>39</sup> ēnūntiāta est. Ea rēs est Helvētiis<sup>41</sup> per indicium ēnūntiāta. Orgetorigem<sup>40</sup> causam dicere<sup>42</sup> coēgērunt. Mōribus<sup>43</sup> suis eum coēgērunt. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. Poenam<sup>44</sup> sequī<sup>45</sup> oportēbat. Eum damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut igni<sup>46</sup> cremārētur.<sup>47</sup> Orgetorix suam familiam coēgit. Diē<sup>48</sup> cōnstitūtā Orgetorix suam familiam undique coēgit. Suam familiam, ad<sup>49</sup> hominum milia decem, coēgit. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis,<sup>50</sup> Orgetorix ad<sup>51</sup> iūdiciū suam familiam undique coēgit. Omnēs clientēs eōdem condūxit. Clientēs obaerātōsque suōs eōdem condūxit. Clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum<sup>52</sup> māgnūm numerū habēbat, eōdem condūxit.

Per eōs,<sup>53</sup> nē<sup>54</sup> causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cīvitās iūs suum exsequi cōnābātur. Cīvitās, ob eam rem incitāta, armis<sup>55</sup> iūs suum exsequi cōnābātur. Magistrātūs multitudinem hominū ex<sup>56</sup> agrīs cōgēbant. Orgetorix mortuus est. Cum cīvitās iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur<sup>57</sup> multitudinemque hominū ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est. Suspiciō nōn abest, quin<sup>58</sup> ipse sibi<sup>59</sup> mortem cōsciverit.<sup>60</sup> Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem cōsciverit.

## CHAPTER IV OF CÆSAR

✓ 4. Ea rēs est Helvētiis per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt: damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut ignī cremārētur. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdiciū omnem suam familiām, ad hominū milia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnūm numerū habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. ✓

✓ Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armis iūs suum exsēqui cōnārētur, multitūdinēmque hominū ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit. ✓



## 5. PLANS OF EXODUS MATURE

Nihilō <sup>81</sup> minus, Helvētiī id, quod cōnstituerant, <sup>82</sup> facere cōnantur. <sup>83</sup> Post Orgetorīgis mortem, id facere cōnāntur, ut ē finib⁹ suis exeant. Ubi <sup>49</sup> iam sē <sup>26</sup> ad eam rem paratōs <sup>82</sup> esse arbitrātī sunt, <sup>49</sup> oppida sua omnia incendunt. Oppida sua numerō <sup>88</sup> ad <sup>77</sup> duodecim erant. Vicōs ad quadringentōs incendunt. Reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt. Frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī <sup>84</sup> erant, combūrunt. Id combūrunt <sup>85</sup> ut, domum <sup>25</sup> redditōnis spē <sup>48</sup> sublātā, ad omnia pericula subeunda <sup>71</sup> paratiōrēs essent. <sup>83</sup> Quemque <sup>26</sup> cibāria sibi <sup>17</sup> domō <sup>49</sup> efferre, <sup>76</sup> iubent. Quemque molita cibāria trium <sup>3</sup> mēnsium <sup>2</sup> efferre <sup>76</sup> iubent.

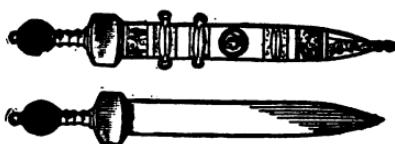
*They persuade other tribes to go also*

Persuādent Rauracis<sup>12</sup> et Tulingis et Latobrigis, finitimis,<sup>13</sup> ut ūnā cum iis proficiscantur. Persuādent iis ut, eōdem cōnsiliō<sup>14</sup> ūsi, ūnā cum iis proficiscantur. Persuādent iis ut, oppidis<sup>15</sup> suis vīcisque exūstis,<sup>16</sup> ūnā cum iis proficiscantur. Bōiōs, receptōs ad sē sociōs<sup>17</sup> sibi<sup>18</sup> adsciscunt. Boiī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant. Bōiōs, qui in agrum Nōricum trānsierant et Nōrēiam oppūgnāverant, sibi adsciscunt.



#### CHAPTER V OF CÆSAR

**V** 5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrāti sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia in-  
 part. cēdunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sē-  
 cum portātūri erant, combūrunt, ut, domum redditōnis spē  
 sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent;  
 trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre  
 iubent. **V** Persuādent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis, finitimis, uti eōdem ūsi cōnsiliō, oppidis suis vīcisque exūstis, ūnā cum eis proficiscantur; Bōiōsque, qui trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.



*Gladii*

## 6. THE TWO ROUTES

Two ways of exit are located, one through the beautiful Pas de l'Ecluse.

Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo<sup>40</sup> exire possent<sup>50</sup>: unum iter per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum,<sup>70</sup> quā singulī carri dūcerentur.<sup>50</sup> Mōns, autem, altissimus,<sup>73</sup> impendēbat ut facile perpauci prohibēre possent. Alterum iter per prōvinciam nostram erat. Id multō<sup>81</sup> facilius atque expeditius erat, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit.<sup>60</sup> Is nōnnūllis locīs<sup>89</sup> vadō trānsitūr.

*They choose the second route*

Helvēti et Allobrogēs nūper pācāti erant. Extrēnum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque finibus<sup>10</sup> Helvētiōrum<sup>1</sup> est Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs<sup>25</sup> pertinet. Helvēti sēsē<sup>26</sup> Allobrogibus<sup>12</sup> persuāsūrōs<sup>84</sup> esse existimābant. Existimābant sēsē Allobrogibus persuāsūrōs, quod<sup>84</sup> Allobrogēs nōndum bonō animō<sup>2</sup> in populū Rōmānum vidērentur.<sup>68</sup> Existimābant sēsē Allobrogibus vel persuāsūrōs vel vi<sup>32</sup> coāctūrōs, ut per suōs finēs Helvētiōs ire paterentur.<sup>48</sup>

*March 28 is set for their departure*

Omnibus rēbus<sup>48</sup> ad profectiōnem comparātis, Helvēti diem dicunt. Diem dicunt, quā<sup>48</sup> diē omnēs ad ripam<sup>11</sup> Rhodanī conveniant.<sup>48</sup> Is diēs erat ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs. Lūcius Piso et Aulus Gabinius cōnsulēs erant. Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōnsulibus.<sup>48</sup>

## CHAPTER VI OF CÆSAR

6. Erant omnino itinera duo quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum per Sêquanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iûram et flumen Rhodanum, vix quâ singuli carri ducerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpauci prohibere possent: alterum per prôvinciam nostram, multo facilitius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fines Helvetiôrum et Allobrogum, quâ nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nonnullis locis vadô transiit.

Extrênum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiôrum finibus Genâva. Ex eô oppidô pôns ad Helvetiôs pertinet. Allobrogibus sêse vel persuâsûrôs, quod nondum bono animo in populum Rômânum vidêrentur, existimabant, vel vi coactûrôs ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectiôrem comparatis, diem dicunt quâ diê ad ripam Rhodani omnés convenient. Is diês erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisone, A. Gabiniô cônsulibus.

## 7. THE NEWS REACHES CÆSAR.— HIS ACTIVE MEASURES

Cæsar was at Rome, making preparations to set out on his post-consular appointment as governor of Gaul. Word was brought to him of the plans of the Helvetii. He immediately left Rome, and, by forced marches of fully one hundred miles a day, reached the Rhone within a week. On his arrival, he began vigorous operations against the Helvetii, who soon made overtures to him. But Cæsar was unwilling to grant their request of a peaceful march across Ro-

They arrange  
to cross  
the Rhone  
and march  
through the  
Roman  
Province.

man dominion, especially because of his remembrance of certain reverses in the trouble with the Cimbri, in which the Helvetii had had a share, some fifty years before. However, he craftily postponed his answer to the Helvetian delegates until the middle of the coming April. Thus the wariness of the politician becomes the wariness of the military commander.

Caesari<sup>11</sup> id nūntiātūm est. Eōs<sup>20</sup> per prōvinciam nos-  
tram iter facere<sup>74</sup> cōnārī<sup>67</sup> nūntiātūm est. Cum id  
Caesari<sup>14</sup> nūntiātūm esset,<sup>53</sup> mātūrāt<sup>94</sup> ab urbe proficisci.<sup>74</sup>  
Caesar in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad<sup>77</sup> Genāvam  
pervenit. Quam<sup>78</sup> māximis potest itineribus contendit.  
Prōvinciae<sup>12</sup> tōtī māgnūm numerūm militūm<sup>5</sup> imperat.  
Quam māximum potest numerūm militūm imperat. Erat  
omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna. Pontem,<sup>26</sup> qui erat  
ad<sup>77</sup> Genāvam, iubet<sup>76</sup> rescindī. Ubi<sup>59</sup> dē ēius<sup>8</sup> adventū  
Helvētiī certiōrēs<sup>62</sup> facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt. Hi  
nōbiliſſimi<sup>62</sup> civitātis<sup>6</sup> erant. Helvētiī lēgātōs mittunt,  
cūiū lēgātiōnis<sup>5</sup> Nammēius et Verucloetius p̄ncipem  
locum obtinēbant. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt,<sup>94</sup>  
qui<sup>48</sup> dicerent,<sup>94</sup> sibi<sup>15</sup> esse in animō iter per prōvinciam  
facere. Sibi esse<sup>66</sup> in animō per prōvinciam sine ūlō  
maleficiō ire,<sup>76</sup> proptereā quod aliud iter habērent<sup>68</sup> nūl-  
lum. Helvētiōs rogārē<sup>67</sup> ut, voluntātē<sup>58</sup> Caesaris, id sibi<sup>93</sup>  
facere<sup>76</sup> liceat.<sup>48</sup>

*Cæsar's reasons for rejecting; his duplicity*

Caesar id concēdendum<sup>85</sup> esse nōn putābat, quod<sup>60</sup> Lū-  
ciūm Cassiūm memoriā tenēbat. L. Cassius, cōnsul, occi-  
sus erat. Exercitus ēius ab Helvētiis<sup>30</sup> pulsus et sub  
iugum missus erat. Caesar, quod memoriā<sup>32</sup> tenēbat L.  
Cassiuī,<sup>26</sup> cōsulem,<sup>79</sup> occisum,<sup>76</sup> concēdendum<sup>67</sup> nōn  
putābat. Neque existimābat hominēs,<sup>26</sup> inimicō animō,<sup>26</sup>

temperatūrōs<sup>64</sup> esse ab iniūriā et maleficiō.<sup>65</sup> Caesar nōn existimābat Helvētiōs,<sup>66</sup> facultāte<sup>68</sup> itineris<sup>6</sup> faciundi<sup>6</sup> per prōvinciam datā, temperatūrōs<sup>67</sup> ā maleficiō. Tamen, lēgātis<sup>11</sup> respondit sē<sup>68</sup> diem ad dēliberandum<sup>71</sup> sūmptūrūm<sup>66</sup> esse. Tamen, ut spatiū intercēdere<sup>74</sup> posset, dum<sup>66</sup> militēs convenirent, lēgātis respondit sē diem sūmptūrūm.<sup>64</sup> Lēgātis respondit: sī quid vellent,<sup>68</sup> ad Īdūs<sup>77</sup> Aprilēs reverterentur.<sup>70</sup>

---

### CHAPTER VII OF CÆSAR

7. Caesari cum id nūntiātūm esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci, et quam māximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulte-  
 Caesar de-  
 lays them by riōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. (P1ō-  
 pretexts. viciae tōtī quam māximum potest militūm numerum imperat (erat omnīmō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem qui erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis, cūiis lēgātiōnis Nam-mēius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinēbant, qui dicerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre ut ēius voluntātē id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundi, temperatūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō existimābat. Tamen, ut spatiū intercēdere posset dum militēs quōs imperāverat convenirent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrūm: sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur.

## 8. CÆSAR'S FORTIFICATIONS

NOTE: For a full description of this line of defenses, see the *Notes*.

Interea, ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Iūram, mūrum fossamque perdūcit. Eā legiōne,<sup>32</sup> quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque qui ex prōvinciā<sup>40</sup> convēnerant, mūrum fossamque perdūcit. Ā lacū Lemannō, qui in flūmen<sup>35</sup> Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, qui finēs Sēquanōrum ab<sup>36</sup> Helvētiis dividit, mūrum fossamque perdūcit. Mūrum fossamque, milia<sup>37</sup> passum xviii in longitūdinem, perdūcit. Mūrum fossamque, in altitūdinem pedum<sup>2</sup> sēdecim, perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit et castella commūnit, quō<sup>78</sup> facilius Helvētiōs prohibēre possit. Caesar castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē<sup>43</sup> invitō trānsire cōnārentur,<sup>96</sup> prohibēre possit.

*The appointed day arrives, and Caesar refuses the request made several days before*

Ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis, vēnit. Lēgātī ad eum revertērunt. Iis dixit Caesar: *Mōre et exemplō populi Rōmāni, nōn possum iter ullī per prōvinciam dare; sī vim facere cōnābimini,<sup>62</sup> prohibēbō.<sup>62</sup>*

Ubi<sup>59</sup> ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis, vēnit, negat sē<sup>26</sup> posse<sup>67</sup> iter ullī<sup>11</sup> dare.<sup>74</sup>

Ubi ea diēs vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē posse iter per prōvinciam dare. Si vim facere cōnentur,<sup>68</sup> sē eōs prohibitūrum esse ostendit. Negat sē, mōre<sup>29</sup> et exemplō populi Rōmāni,<sup>3</sup> posse iter ullī per prōvinciam dare.

*The Helvetii attempt to pass, but are repulsed*

Helvētiī, eā spē<sup>31</sup> dēiecti, si perrumpere possent,<sup>32</sup> cōnāti sunt. Nāvibus iūnctis ratibusque complūribus factis,<sup>43</sup> Helvētiī cōnāti sunt si perrumpere possent. Alii vadis<sup>32</sup> Rhodani, quā minima<sup>32</sup> altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, si perrumpere possent, cōnāti sunt. Helvētiī, operis mūnitiōne<sup>32</sup> et militum<sup>3</sup> concursū et tēlis repulsi, hōc<sup>33</sup> cōnātū dēstitērunt.



#### CHAPTER VIII OF CÆSAR'S TEXT

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque qui ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, qui in flū-  
 He prevents men Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, qui  
 their crossing the Rhone. finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dīvidit, milia passuum decem novem mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praeſidia dis- pōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, si sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre possit. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populi Rōmāni posse iter ulli per prōvinciam dare; et, si vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dēiecti, nāvibus iūnctis ratibusque complūribus factis, aliī vadis Rhodani, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, si perrumpere possent cōnāti, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsi hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

## 9. ACROSS THE SEQUANIAN COUNTRY

Failing to force a way against Cæsar's obstructions, the exit through the famous Pas de l'Ecluse alone remained. Let the student study the map of Helvetia, p. 48.

Relinquēbātur ūna via per Sēquanōs, quā,<sup>32</sup> Sēquanis<sup>33</sup> invītis, propter angustiās nōn poterant ire. Cum Helvētiī, suā sponte,<sup>34</sup> his<sup>12</sup> persuādēre nōn possent,<sup>35</sup> lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt. Lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem mittunt,<sup>36</sup> ut, eō<sup>43</sup> dēprecātōre, ā Sēquanis impetrārent.<sup>34</sup>

*Dumnorix, the Aeduan*

Dumnorix, grātiā<sup>39</sup> et largitiōne, apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat. Helvētiis<sup>19</sup> erat amicus<sup>32</sup> quod ex eā civitātē filiam Orgetorīgis in mātrīmōnium dūxerat. Cupiditātē<sup>39</sup> rēgnī<sup>4</sup> adductus, novis rēbus<sup>12</sup> studēbat. Quam<sup>73</sup> plūrimās civitātēs suō beneficiō<sup>34</sup> obstrictās<sup>38</sup> habēre volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanis impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patientur.<sup>40</sup> Perficit ut inter sēsē obsidēs dent. Sēquani obsidēs dant nē<sup>48</sup> itinere<sup>37</sup> Helvētiōs prohibeant. Helvētiī, ut sine<sup>34</sup> maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.<sup>48</sup>



## CHAPTER IX OF CÆSAR

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanis invītis propter angustiās ire nōn poterant. His<sup>12</sup> cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt, ut eō<sup>43</sup> dēprecātōre ā Sēquanis impetrārent. Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiis erat amicus quod ex eā civitāte

The Helvetians obtain permission from the Sequani to pass through their country.

Orgetorigis filiam in mātrīmōnium dūxerat; et cupiditātē rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanis impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquani, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.



#### 10. REPORTED DESTINATION OF THE HELVETII

Caesari<sup>11</sup> renūtiātur, Helvētiīs esse<sup>66</sup> in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum<sup>1</sup> et Aeduōrum iter in finēs<sup>26</sup> Santonūm<sup>1</sup> facere.<sup>76</sup> Santonēs nōn longē ā fīnibus<sup>95</sup> Tolōsātiūm absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā.

#### *Reason for Cæsar's opposition*

Si id fiet,<sup>62</sup> māgnō cum<sup>88</sup> periculō prōvinciae erit.<sup>62</sup>

Si id fieret,<sup>68</sup> Caesar intellegēbat cum māgnō periculō futūrum esse ut<sup>100</sup> prōvincia hominēs bellicōsōs fīnitimōs<sup>79</sup> habēret. Intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō futūrum esse ut prōvincia hominēs, populi<sup>4</sup> Rōmāni inimicōs,<sup>79</sup> locis<sup>39</sup> patentibus fīnitimōs<sup>79</sup> habēret.<sup>100</sup> Māgnō cum periculō erit ut prōvincia Helvētiōs locis patentibus māximēque frūmentāriis habeat.<sup>94</sup>

#### *Cæsar returns to Italy for new legions*

Ob eās causās, eī mūnītiōnī,<sup>18</sup> quam fēcerat, Titum La-biēnum lēgātūm<sup>79</sup> praeſēcit. Ipse in ītaliā māgnis itineri-bus contendit. Ibi duās legiōnēs cōnscribit<sup>94</sup> et trēs, quae

circum Aquilēiam hiemābant,<sup>34</sup> ex hibernis ēdūcit. Quā proximum<sup>35</sup> iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum his<sup>36</sup> quinque legiōnibus īre contendit.

*The Alpine tribes vainly block his way*

Ibi Ceutrōnēs et Grāioceli et Caturigēs, locis superiōribus occupātis,<sup>37</sup> exercitum itinere<sup>38</sup> prohibēre cōnantur. His<sup>39</sup> complūribus proeliis<sup>40</sup> pulsis, ab Ocelō in finēs Vo-contiōrum diē<sup>41</sup> septimō pervenit. Ocelum est citeriōris prōvinciae oppidum extrēnum.<sup>42</sup> Vocontiī sunt ulteriōris prōvinciae.<sup>43</sup> Inde in finēs Allobrogum, ab Allobrogib⁹ in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primi.



CHAPTER X OF CÆSAR

10. Caesari renūtiātur Helvētiis esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā. Id si fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populi Rōmāni inimicōs, locis patentibus māximēque frūmentāriis finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōni quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātūm praefēcit; ipse in Ītaliā māgnis itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernis ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum his quinque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutrōnēs et Grāioceli et Caturigēs locis superiōribus occupātis itinere exercitum

Cæsar  
brings up his  
forces to op-  
pose their  
passage.

prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliis pulsis, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodānum primi.



### 11. THE RAVAGES OF WAR

“Even now the devastation is begun,  
And half the business of destruction done.”

— GOLDSMITH.

Helvētii iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūixerant. In finēs Aeduōrum pervēnerant, eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab iis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. Lēgātōs mittunt rogātūm<sup>1</sup> auxilium.

#### *The Aeduī*

“The Aeduī alone of the Gauls claim the name of brotherhood with the Roman people.” — TACITUS.

Aeduī dicunt: Sē<sup>2</sup> ita meritōs esse ut agrī vāstārī nōn dēbuerint. Ita sē omni tempore meritōs esse ut liberi Aeduōrum in servitūtem abdūcī nōn dēbuerint. Ita sē dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōnspectū exercitū nostri oppida eōrum expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.

“ *We have nothing left*”

Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessārii et cōnsanguinei Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt: sēsē vim hostium

nōn facile prohibēre. Ambarri dicunt: sēsē, dēpopulātis agris, nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, qui trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā<sup>34</sup> sē ad Caesarem recipiunt. Dēmōnstrant: sibi,<sup>35</sup> praeter agrī<sup>36</sup> solum, nihil esse reliqui.<sup>37</sup> Quibus rēbus adductus, Caesar nōn exspectandum esse sibi<sup>38</sup> statuit, dum Helvētiī in finēs Santonum pervenirent.<sup>39</sup> Statuit sibi nōn exspectandum, dum, omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōnsūmptis, in Santonēs Helvētiī pervenirent.

—•—

#### CHAPTER XI OF CÆSAR

II. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūixerant, et in Aeduōrum finēs pervenerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab ēis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omni tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessārii et cōsanguinei Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātis agris nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, qui trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōnsūmptis, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent.

The Helvētians invade the country of the Aeduī who implore Cæsar's protection.

## 12. THE CROSSING OF THE SAÔNE

Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēqua-nōrum in Rhodanum influit. Arar incrēdibili<sup>34</sup> lēnitāte ita fluit ut<sup>100</sup> oculis<sup>32</sup> in utram partem fluat<sup>36</sup> iūdicāri nōn possit. Id Helvētiī, ratibus āc lintribus iūnctis, trānsi-bant.<sup>36</sup> Caesar certior factus est, Helvētiōs trēs<sup>32</sup> partēs cōpiārum id flūmen<sup>32</sup> trādūxisse.<sup>32</sup> Per explōrātōrēs<sup>39</sup> Caesar certior factus est, quārtēm ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse. Dē tertīā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus,<sup>33</sup> ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

### *The first contact at arms*

Eōs impeditōs et inōpinantēs aggressus,<sup>33</sup> māgnam partem eōrum concidit. Reliqui sēsē fugae mandārunt (mandavērunt) atque in proximās silvās<sup>35</sup> abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus: nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hic pāgus ūnus L. Cassium cō-sulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Cassium, cum domō<sup>40</sup> exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā,<sup>41</sup> Tigurinī interfēcerant.

### *Significance of the fate of the Tigurini*

Ita, pars civitatis Helvētiae, quae īsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō<sup>18</sup> intulerat, princeps poenās persolvit. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō<sup>38</sup> deōrum immortālium, quae pars civitatis Helvētiae īsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē (quārē) Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus

est. Privātās iniūriās ultus est quod Tigurini L. Pisōnem lēgātūm proeliō interfēcerant. Eōdem proeliō,<sup>41</sup> quō Cassium, Pisōnem interfēcerant. L. Pisō lēgātus avus erat Pisōnis, Caesaris<sup>1</sup> socerī.<sup>79</sup> Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātūm, Tigurini eōdem proeliō, quō<sup>41</sup> Cassium, interfēcerant.

—•—

## CHAPTER XII OF CÆSAR

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īfluit, incrēdibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat iūdicāri nōn possit.

Id Helvētiī ratibus āc lintribus iūnctis trānsibant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopinantēs aggressus māgnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae īsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās

At the crossing of the Arar Caesar destroys the Tigurini who formed the rear-guard of the Helvetians.

sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātūm, Tigurini eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.



### 13. ACROSS THE SAÔNE

Hōc proeliō factō, Caesar pontem in Arare faciendum<sup>71</sup> cūrat. Ita exercitum trādūcit ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōsequī posset. Helvētiī repentinō ēius<sup>8</sup> adventū<sup>72</sup> commōti sunt, cum id, quod ipsi diēbus<sup>73</sup> vīgintī aegerrimē cōfēcerant, Caesarem ūnō diē<sup>74</sup> fēcisse intellegerent<sup>75</sup>. Lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cūiūs lēgātiōnis<sup>4</sup> Divicō princeps fuit. Is bellō<sup>76</sup> Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

#### *Divico's speech*

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Si populus Rōmānus pācem cum Helvētiis faceret, Helvētiōs in eam partem itūrōs esse atque ibi futūrōs, ubi Caesar eōs cōstituisset atque esse voluisset. Sin Caesar eōs bellō persecūi persevērāret, reminiscerētur<sup>77</sup> veteris<sup>9</sup> incommodi populi Rōmāni. Reminiscerētur pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imērōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum<sup>78</sup> ii, quī flūmen trānsissent, suis<sup>79</sup> auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē virtūti populi Rōmāni tribueret. Quod ūnum pāgum adortus esset, nē ob eam rem aut suaē māgnopere virtūti tribueret aut Helvētiōs ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus didicisse, ut virtūte<sup>80</sup> contenderent.<sup>49</sup> Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īsidiis<sup>82</sup> nīterentur. Quārē, nē committeret ut

is locus, ex calamitâte populi Rômâni nômen caperet.<sup>49</sup> Nê committeret ut is locus, ubi cônstitissent, ex interne-  
ciône exercitûs<sup>4</sup> Rômâni nômen caperet, aut memoriam  
prôderet.

*Divico's speech in direct discourse*

NOTE: Let the pupil examine carefully the changes made, comparing it closely with the preceding indirect form. Study Rules 66-70.

“*Si* populus Rômânu*s* pâcem cum Helvëti*s* faciet, Helvëti*ū* in eam partem *ibunt* atque ibi *erunt*, ubi eôs *tū*, Caesar, cônstitueris atque esse volueris. *Sin tū*, Caesar, eôs bellô *persequi* *perseverâbis*, *reminiscere* veteris incommodi populi Rômâni. *Reminiscere* pristinae virtutis Helvëti*ōrum*. Quod imprôvisô *ūnum* pâgum *adortus es*, cum *ii*, qui flûmen *trânsierant*, suis auxilium ferre nôn possent, nôl*i* virtuti populi Rômâni *tribuere*. Quod *ūnum* pâgum *adortus es*, nôl*i* ob eam rem aut *tuae* mâgnopere virtuti*ū* *tribuere* aut Helvëti*ōs* ipsôs *dëspicere*. *Nôs* ita à patribus *didicimus* ut virtute *contendâmus*. *Nôs* ita à patribus mâiôribusque nostris *didicimus* ut magis virtute *contendâmus* quam dolô aut insidiis *nitâmur*. Quârê nôl*i* *committere* ut is locus ex calamitâte populi Rômâni nômen *capiat*. Nôl*i* *committere* ut is locus, ubi cônstitimus, ex interne-  
ciône exercitûs Rômâni nômen *capiat*, aut memoriam *prôdat*.”



CHAPTER XIII OF CÆSAR

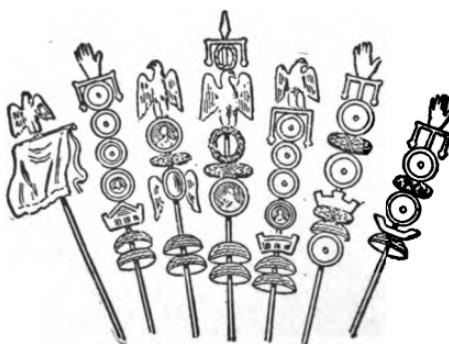
13. Hôc proeliô factô, reliquâs côpiâs Helvëti*ōrum* ut cônsequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum cûrat atque ita exercitum trâdûcit. Helvëti*ū* repentinô éius adventû commôti, cum id quod ipsi diébus xx aegerrimê cônfe-

cerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūiūs lēgātiōnis Divicō

**The Hel-  
vetians,  
headed by  
Divico,  
haughtily  
ask for  
peace.**

princeps fuit, qui bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset:

sin bellō persecūi persevērāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum ei qui flūmen trānsissent suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suaē māgnopere virtūti tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret: sē ita ā patribus māiōribus-que suis didicisse ut magis virtūte contendenter quam dolō aut insidiis nīterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitiſſent ex calamitāte populi Rōmāni et interneſiōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.



*Signa*

## 14. CÆSAR'S REPLY

His Caesar ita respondit: Eō<sup>29</sup> sibi minus dubitatiōnis<sup>5</sup> dari, quod eās rēs memorīa tenēret. Sē eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī commēmorāssent, eō gravius ferre quō<sup>31</sup> minus meritō<sup>30</sup> populi Rōmānī accidissent. Si populus Rōmānus alicūius iniūriae<sup>7</sup> sibi<sup>18</sup> cōnscius fuisse, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre. Sed populum Rōmānum eō dēceptum esse, quod aliquid ā sē commissum esse nōn intellegeret, quārē timēret. Eō dēceptum, quod sine causā sibi<sup>16</sup> timendum esse nōn putāret. Quod<sup>101</sup> si veteris contumēliae<sup>8</sup> oblīvisci vellet, num<sup>69</sup> etiam memoriam recentium iniūriārum<sup>4</sup> dēpōnere posse?<sup>69</sup> Num etiam recentium iniūriārum — quod, eō invitō,<sup>43</sup> Helvētiī iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs et Ambarrōs et Allobrogēs vexāssent — memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod Helvētiī suā victōriā<sup>29</sup> tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs his,<sup>11</sup> quōs ulcisci velint, secundiōrēs rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Quō<sup>78</sup> gravius hominēs ex commūtatiōne rērum doleant, deōs immortālēs his, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdere.

*Cæsar's terms of peace*

Cum ea ita sint,<sup>52</sup> tamen, sēsē cum Helvētiis pācem factūrum esse. Si obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, et si Aeduīs<sup>93</sup> dē iniūriis, satisfaciant, item si Allobrogibūs<sup>98</sup> satisfaciant, sēsē cum Helvētiis pācem esse factūrum. Si obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, ut ea, quae polliceantur, Helvētiōs factūrōs esse intellegat, Caesarem cum iis pācem esse factūrum.

Si Helvētiī Aeduīs dē iniūriis, quās ipsīs<sup>18</sup> sociisque eōrum intulerint, satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum.

*Divico's retort*

Divicō respondit: Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suīs ita insti-  
tūtōs esse, ut obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōsuērint. Ēius  
rei<sup>4</sup> populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō,  
discessit.

NOTE: Let the pupil now write Cæsar's reply in *direct* form.

—•••—

CHAPTER XIV OF CÆSAR

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitatiō-  
nis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgāti Helvētiī commemorās-  
sent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre  
caesar pro-  
poses terms  
which they  
refuse. quō minus meritō populi Rōmāni accidissent;  
qui si aliciūs iniūriāe sibi cōscius fuisset,  
nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque  
commissum ā sē intellegeret quā rē timēret, neque sine  
causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae  
obliviscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō  
invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod  
Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent,  
memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam inso-  
lenter glōriarentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās  
tulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōsuēsse enim  
deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtatiōne  
rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīsci velint, his  
secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem  
concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab eis sibi

dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduis dē iniūriis quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogībus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suīs institūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērint; ēius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.



### 15. BOTH ARMIES ADVANCE

Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Cae-sar. Equitātum omnem, ad <sup>77</sup> numerum quattuor milium, praemittit, quī<sup>78</sup> videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant.<sup>79</sup> Equitātum omnem, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Aeduis atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit.

#### *Cæsar meets a slight reverse*

Qui<sup>80</sup> novissimum agmen cupidius<sup>81</sup> insecūti, aliēnō locō<sup>82</sup> cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt. Pauci dē nostris cadunt. Quō proeliō sublāti sunt Helvē-tii, quod quīngentis equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitū prōpulerant. Helvētiī, eō proeliō sublāti, audācius subsistere nōnumquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nos-trōs lacessere coepērunt. Cæsar suōs ā proeliō continē-bat āc satis habēbat in prae-sentiā hostem rapinīs, pābulā-tiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs<sup>83</sup> circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, ut inter novissimum agmen hos-tium et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius<sup>84</sup> quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus passuum interesset.

## CHAPTER XV OF CÆSAR

**15.** Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Aeduis atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit qui videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecūti alienō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et pauci dē nostris cadunt. Quō proeliō sublāti Helvētiī, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōnumquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coēpērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, āc satis habēbat in prae-sentiā hostem rapinis, pābulatiōnibus populatiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita dies circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus passuum interesset.



## 16. LACK OF SUPPLIES

Interim cotidiē Caesar Aeduōs<sup>21</sup> frūmentum, quod pūblicē pollicitī essent,<sup>22</sup> flāgitāre.<sup>23</sup> Nam, propter frigora, nōn modo frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat. Propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, satis māgna cōpia pābuli nōn suppetēbat. Eō autem frūmentō<sup>24</sup>, quod flūmine<sup>25</sup> Arare nāvibus subvexerat, ūti minus poterat, proptereā quod Helvētiī iter ab Arare āver-

terant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem<sup>23</sup> ex diē dūcere<sup>24</sup> Aeduī. Frūmentum cōnferri,<sup>25</sup> comportāri, adesse dicere Aeduī.

*Cæsar censures the Aeduī*

Ubi sē diūtius<sup>26</sup> dūci intellēxit et diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mētiri oportēret, prīcipibus eōrum convocātis, graviter eōs accūsat. Prīcipum Aeduōrum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in his Divitiācō et Liscō.<sup>27</sup> Liscus summō magistrātū<sup>28</sup> praeerat, quem Aeduī *vergobretum*<sup>29</sup> appellant, qui creātur annuus et vītae<sup>30</sup> necisque in suōs potestātem habet. Caesar prīcipēs graviter accūsat, quod, cum frūmentum neque emī neque ex agris sūmī posset,<sup>31</sup> tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus,<sup>32</sup> ab iis nōn sublevētur.<sup>33</sup> Multō<sup>34</sup> etiam gravius queritur, praesertim cum, eōrum precibus adductus, bellum suscēperit. Eōs accūsat, quod sit dēstitūtus.<sup>35</sup>



CHAPTER XVI OF CÆSAR'S TEXT

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē polliciti flāgitāre. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dic-  
tum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvexerat proptereā minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētii āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī; cōnferri, comportāri, adesse dicere. Ubi sē diūtius dūci intellēxit et diem instāre quō diē frūmentum militibus mētiri

The Aeduans  
fail to furnish  
Cæsar prom-  
ised supplies.

oportēret, convocātis eōrum p̄incipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in his Divitiācō et Liscō, qui summō magistrātūi p̄aeerat, quem vēgobretum appellant Aeduī, qui creātūr annuus et vitae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agris sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab eis nōn sublevētur; p̄aesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.



#### 17. LISCUS EXPLAINS THE CAUSE: OPPOSITION OF A POWERFUL PRIVATE CLASS

Liscus ōratiōne Caesaris adductus est. Tum dēmum Liscus p̄opōnit quod anteā tacuerat. Dixit: Esse nōn-nūllōs, quōrum auctōritās plūrimum valeat quam ipsi magistrātūs. Quōs privātim plūs posse quam magistrātūs. Hōs multitudinem dēterrēre, nē frūmentum cōferant quod cōferre<sup>74</sup> dēbeant. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōratiōne plēbem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōferant quod dēbeant. Hōs p̄incipātūm Galliae<sup>4</sup> obtinēre nōn posse. Hōs dicere<sup>67</sup>: Gallōrum<sup>8</sup> quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre p̄aestāre. Hōs dicere: sī iam p̄incipātūm Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum imperia perferre p̄aestāre. Hōs dicere: sē nōn dubitāre quin<sup>80</sup> Rōmānī Aeduīs<sup>87</sup> libertātem sint ēreptūri.<sup>84</sup> Hōs dicere: sī Helvētiōs superrāverint Rōmānī, Rōmānōs ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs libertātem ēreptūrōs esse.

Ab eisdem nostra cōnsilia hostibus ēnūntiāri. Nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castris gerantur ēnūntiāri. Hōs ā sē coērcēri<sup>76</sup> nōn posse. Sē Caesari necessāriam rem ēnūn-

tiare coactum.<sup>67</sup> Intellegere sēsē cum quantō<sup>68</sup> periculō id fēcerit.<sup>69</sup> Sē ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.<sup>70</sup>

### CHAPTER XVII OF CÆSAR'S TEXT

17. Tum dēnum Liscus ōratiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nōnnūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, qui privātim plūs possint quam ipsi magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōratiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōferant quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam p̄incipātūm Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quin, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmāni, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūri. Ab eisdem nostra cōsilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus ēnūntiāri; hōs ā sē coērcēri nōn posse. Quin etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesari ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

Liscus  
shows the  
bad faith of  
an Āduan  
faction  
headed by  
Dumnorix.

### 17. IN DIRECT DISCOURSE FOR PURPOSE OF COMPARISON

*Liscus' own words to Cæsar*

“ *Sunt nōnnūllī quōrum auctōritās valeat, qui privātim plūs possint<sup>70</sup> quam ipsi magistrātūs. Hī multitūdinem dēterrent nē frūmentum cōferant<sup>71</sup> quod dēbent. Praestat, sī iam p̄incipātūm obtinēre nōn possunt, Gallōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitant quin,<sup>70</sup> sī Helvētiōs su-*

peraverint Rōmānī, libertātem sint ēreptūri. Ab eisdem *vestra* cōnsilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus ēnūntiantur; *hī ā mē* coērcēri nōn possunt. Quin etiam, quod necessāriō coāctus *tibi ēnūntiāvī*, *intellegō* quantō id cum periculō *fēcerim*, et ob eam causam quam diū *potuī tacuī*."



### 18. THE PRIVATE CONFERENCE WITH LISCUS

Caesar Dumnorigem dēsignārī sentiēbat. Hāc ōratiōne Lisci, Dumnorix dēsignātus est. Caesar, plūribus<sup>73</sup> prae-sentibus,<sup>74</sup> eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat. Celeriter concilium dimittit. Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex eō sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat. Liscus liberius atque audācius dicit. Caesar eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit. Reperit ea esse vēra: Dumnorigem cupidum<sup>75</sup> rērum<sup>76</sup> novārum esse; complūrēs annōs<sup>77</sup> portōria Aeduōrum redēmpta habēre.

Dumnorix summā audāciā<sup>78</sup> erat. Māgnā grātiā<sup>79</sup> apud plēbem erat. Complūrēs annōs omnia Aeduōrum vectigālia redēmpta habēbat. Vectigālia parvō pretiō<sup>80</sup> redēmpta habēbat, proptereā quod, illō<sup>81</sup> licente, contrā licēri audēret<sup>82</sup> nēmō. His rēbus suam rem familiārem augēbat. Facultātēs māgnās ad largiendum comparābat. Māgnum numerum equitātū suō sūmptū semper alēbat. Equitātum circum sē semper habēbat. Domi<sup>83</sup> largiter poterat. Neque sōlum domi sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter poterat. Hūiis potentiae<sup>84</sup> causā mātrem in Biturīgibus collocāvit. Mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illic nōbīlissimō āc potentissimō collocāvit. Ipse ex Helvētiis uxōrem habuit. Sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāvit. Favēbat et cupiēbat

Helvētiis<sup>12</sup> propter eam affinitatē. Ōdit etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū<sup>20</sup> potentia ēius dēminūta sit. Eōrum adventū, Divitiācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae<sup>6</sup> atque honōris restitūtus est. Si quid accidat<sup>23</sup> Rōmānis, summam in spem, per Helvētiōs, rēgnī obtinēdi veniat. Imperiō<sup>29</sup> populi Rōmāni, dē rēgnō dēspērat. Nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā grātiā quam habet, dēspērat.

Proelium equestre aduersum paucis ante diēbus<sup>21</sup> factum erat. Reperiēbat in quaerendō Caesar, initium ēius fugae<sup>4</sup> ā Dumnorige factum esse. Equitātui,<sup>18</sup> quem auxiliō<sup>17</sup> Caesarī Aedui miserant, Dumnorix preeerat. Eōrum<sup>8</sup> fugā,<sup>20</sup> reliquus equitātus perterritus est.

---

### CHAPTER. XVIII OF CÆSAR

18. Caesar hāc ὥrātiōne Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiāci frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactāri nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audācius.

The influence of Dumnorix. His character and policy.

#### *The influence of Dumnorix*

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vēra: 'Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter liberālitatē grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum.

#### *His character*

Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectigālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, proptereā quod

illō licente contrā licēri audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnum numerum equitātū suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter posse, atque hūiūs potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illic nōbilissimō āc potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātēs collocāsse.

*His policy*

Favēre et cupere Helvētiis propter eam affinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Divitiācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinēdi venīre; imperiō populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā, dēspērāre.' Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus esset factum, initium ēius fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque ēius equitibus (nam equitātui, quem auxiliō Caesari Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.



*Galeae*

**19. FACTS AND SUSPICIONS WEIGH AGAINST  
THE AEDUAN MAGNATE**

Ad hās suspicōnēs certissimae rēs accessērunt. Dumnorix per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxerat. Obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāverat. Ea omnia, iniūssū Cae-saris, fēcerat. Ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsātus erat. Ea omnia, īnscientibus Aeduīs, fēcerat. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, Caesar satis esse causae<sup>48</sup> arbitrābātur quā rē in eum animadverteret.<sup>49</sup> Arbitrābātur satis esse causae quā rē in Dumnorigem aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret.

*The opposing force of Divitiacus' loyalty*

Ūna rēs his omnibus rēbus<sup>50</sup> repūgnābat. Divitiāci frātris in populum Rōmānum summum studium cōgnōverat. Summam in sē voluntātem cōgnōverat. Egregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam Divitiāci cōgnōverat. Hōc omnibus Dumnorigis iniūriis repūgnābat: nam verēbātur Caesar, nē, ēius suppliciō, Divitiāci animū offendere.<sup>50</sup> Itaque, priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Divitiācum ad sē vocāri iubet. Cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per Gaium Vale-riūm Procillum cum eō colloquitur. C. Valerius Procillus, princeps Galliae prōvinciae, familiāris suus erat. Ei summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat.

Caesar simul commonefacit quae, ipsō praesente, in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta.<sup>51</sup> Ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Caesar petit atque hortātur ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animi<sup>4</sup> ipse dē eō statuat. Caesar petit ut, causā cōgnitā, vel ipse dē eō statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

## CHAPTER XIX OF CÆSAR

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspicōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et civitātis sed etiam īscientibus ipsis fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere iubēret. His omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Divitiāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat: nam nē ēius suppliciō Divitiāci animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Divitiācum ad sē vocāri iubet, et cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis per C. Valerium Procillum, prīcipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praeſente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit; petit atque hortātur ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animi vel ipse dē eō, causā cōgnitā, statuat, vel civitātem statuere iubeat.



Nāvis Longa

## 20. THE PLEA OF DIVITIACUS

Divitiācus, multis cum lacrimīs,<sup>34</sup> Caesarem complexus est. Obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius<sup>35</sup> in frātrem staueret.

Divitiācus dixit :

“ *Scio haec esse vēra, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris<sup>36</sup> capit, proptereā quod, cum ego grātiā<sup>37</sup> plūrimum possem domī atque in reliquā Galliā et cum ille minimum propter adulēscētiam posset, per mē<sup>38</sup> crēvit; quibus opibus<sup>39</sup> āc nervis nōn sōlum ad minuendam<sup>40</sup> grātiā meām sed paene ad perniciem meām ūtitur. Ego tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgi commoveor. Quod<sup>41</sup> sī quid ei<sup>42</sup> ā tē acciderit, cum ego hunc locum amicitiae apud tē teneam, nēmō existimābit nōn meā voluntātē factum esse. Quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animi ā mē avertentur.* ”

*Dumnorix is spared but placed under guard*

Plūribus verbīs<sup>43</sup> ā Caesare haec petēbat. Cum haec flēns peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prēndit. Cōnsōlātus rogat ut finem ūrandi faciat.<sup>44</sup> Tanti<sup>45</sup> ēius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit utī suum dolōrem condōnet.<sup>46</sup> Rei pūblicae iniūriā Divitiāci precibus<sup>47</sup> condōnat. Grātia Divitiāci tanti apud Caesarem est utī iniūriās Dumnorigis frātris voluntāti<sup>48</sup> Divitiāci condōnet. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, et frātrem adhibet. Caesar ostendit quae in Dumnorige reprehendat.<sup>49</sup> Caesar prōpōnit quae ipse intellegat, et quae civitās querātur. Caesar ei monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspicōnēs vītet. Sē praeterita

condōnāre dicit. Caesar praeterita Divitiācō frātri condōnat. Caesar Dumnorigī custōdēs pōnit, ut scire possit quae agat, et quibuscum loquātur.



### CHAPTER XX OF CÆSAR

**20.** Divitiācus, multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: 'Scire sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscētiā posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus āc nervis nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiām sed paene ad perniciēm suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgi commovēri. Quod si quid `eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcītiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntātē factum; quā ex rē futūrum uti tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.' Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat finem ūrandī faciat; tanti ēius apud sē grātiām esse ostendit uti et reī pūblicae iniūriām et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī āc precibus condōnet. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspicōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Divitiācō frātri condōnāre dicit. Dumnorigī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

## CONCLUSION

The residue of Cæsar's account of the Helvetian war may be briefly summarized. After the incident last recorded, he follows the enemy for several days, but owing to natural obstructions he cannot gain an advantageous position to check the onward movement. At length lack of food compels him to turn aside to a city westward. The Helvetii mistake this movement for signs of weakening or fear, and in turn become the pursuers, much to Cæsar's unexpected advantage. The change precipitates a battle in which he defeats them with such loss as to preclude further resistance. "The remnant of the once proud and mighty host sadly returned to its mountain home."



*Galli*

The following chapters, bringing the account of the trouble with the Helvetians to a close, were omitted in the earlier edition of this hand-book. They now appear, not merely for artistic unity, — that the student may read without interruption the chronicle of this initial campaign, — but because of the desire of teachers for matter, *immediately at hand*, to test the class in the comprehension and exposition of the original language of Cæsar, without the intermediary aid of the adapted text. Hence, the following text appears *verbatim*, and syntactical references are limited to the most obscure instances.



21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octō,   
 Cæsar ar- quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū  
 ranges to harass the ascēnsus, qui cōgnōscerent mīsit. Renūntiā-  
 Helvetians. tum est facilem esse. Dē tertīā vigiliā T. La-  
 biēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et iis  
 ducib⁹⁹, qui iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis  
 ascendere iubet; quid sui cōnsili⁹⁹ sit, ostendit. Ipse dē  
 quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs  
 contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōn-  
 sidius, qui rei⁹⁹ militāris peritissimus⁹⁹ habēbātur et in  
 exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassi fuerat, cum ex-  
 plōrātōribus praemittitur.



22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērē-  
 tur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quin-

gentis passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cōgnitus esset,<sup>63</sup> Cōnsidius, equō<sup>43</sup> admissō, ad eum accurrit, dicit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupāri voluerit,<sup>64</sup> ab hostibus tenēri: id sē ā Gallicis armis atque insignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem instruit. La-  
biēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra visae<sup>64</sup> essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē<sup>41</sup> per explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suis tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vidisset, prō visō sibi renūtiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervällō, hostēs sequitur et milia<sup>23</sup> passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

His plans are frustrated by the mistake of Considius.

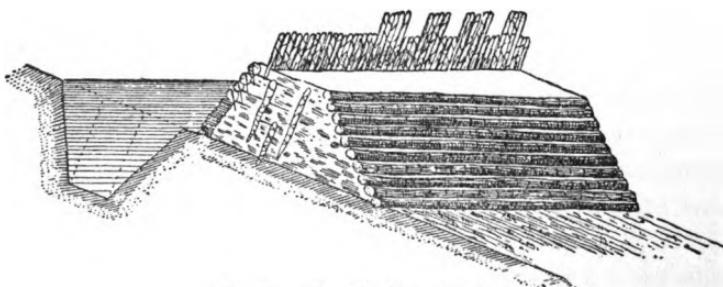
23. Postridiē ēius diēi,<sup>102</sup> quod omnīnō biduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum mētiri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae<sup>14</sup> prōspiciendum<sup>14</sup> existimāvit; iter ab Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte<sup>25</sup> ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemili, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō<sup>81</sup> magis, quod prīdiē superiōribus locis occupātis proelium nōn commisissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōfiderent,

The Romans marching towards Bibracte, are followed and harassed by the Helvetians.

commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinērē<sup>43</sup> conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequī āc lācessere coepērunt.



**24.** Postquam<sup>49</sup> id animum<sup>22</sup> advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque qui sustinēret hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum<sup>1</sup> quat-  
 Caesar pre-  
 pares for  
 battle. The  
 Helvetians  
 advance to  
 the attack.  
 tuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōn- scripserat et omnia auxilia collocārī, āc tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferrī, et eum ab his qui in superiōre aciē cōn- stiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suis carris secūtī, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsi cōfertissimā aciē,<sup>34</sup> rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub pīmam nostram aciem successērunt.



*Section of a Wall and Ditch*

25. Caesar primum suō deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equis, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae toleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Milites ē locō superiore pilis missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallis māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtis ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et colligātis, cum<sup>61</sup> ferum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant, multi ut diū iactatō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem reffere et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Bōii et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis<sup>62</sup> praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressi circumvenire; et id cōspicāti Helvētiī, qui in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmāni conversa<sup>63</sup> signa bipartitō intulērunt: prima et secunda aciēs, ut victis āc submōtis resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

The battle.  
The Helvētians are  
forced to retreat.

26. Ita ancipiū proeliō diū atque āriter pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alteri sē, ut cooperant, in montem recēpērunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō,<sup>64</sup> cum<sup>62</sup> ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āver- sum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam

They are  
routed and  
flee north-  
ward. Cēsar  
pursues.

ad impedimenta pūgnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant,<sup>96</sup> et nōnnūlli inter carrōs rotāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedimentis castrisque<sup>98</sup> nostrī potiti sunt.<sup>99</sup> Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam partem<sup>23</sup> noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostri trīdūm<sup>23</sup> morāti eōs sequī nōn potuissernt. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque misit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent:<sup>70</sup> qui si iūvissent, sē eōdem locō<sup>23</sup> quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.



27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adducti lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum misērunt. Qui<sup>99</sup> cum eum in itinere convēniissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent sup-  
 Surrender of  
 the Helve-  
 tians. Six  
 thousand  
 escape. pliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs qui ad eōs perfūgis-  
 sent<sup>50</sup> poposcit. Dum ea conquiāruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia vi ēius pāgi qui Ver-  
 bigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterriti nē<sup>99</sup> armis trāditis suppliciō afficerentur, sive spē salūtis inducti, quod in tantā multitudine dēditiōrum suam fugam aut occultāri aut om-  
 nīnō ignōrāri posse existimārent, primā nocte<sup>103</sup> ē castris

Helvētiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

---

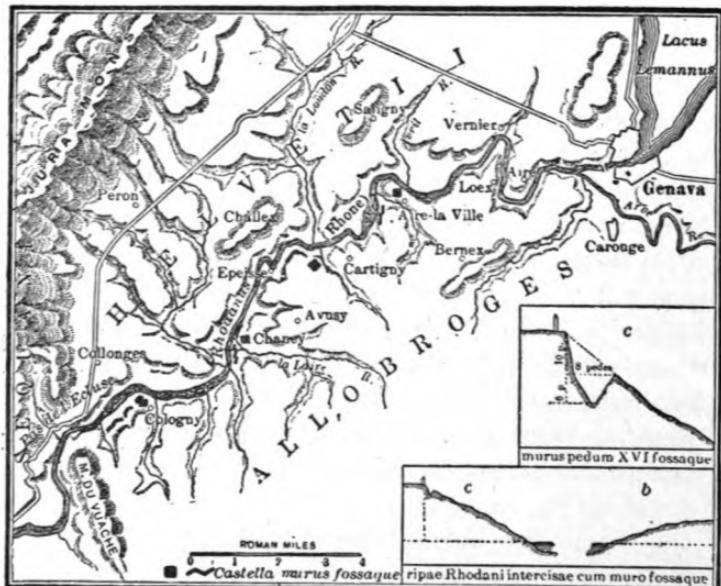
28. Quod<sup>49</sup> ubi<sup>50</sup> Caesar resciit, quōrum per finēs ierant, his uti conquerirent<sup>48</sup> et reducerent, sī sibi pūrgāti esse vellent,<sup>51</sup> imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armis, perfugis trāditis, in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis domi<sup>52</sup> nihil erat quo<sup>53</sup> famem tolerārent,<sup>50</sup> Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eis frūmenti cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque quōs incenderant restituere iussit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētii discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germāni, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent<sup>48</sup> et finitimi Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgniti, ut in finibus suis collocārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris libertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsi erant recēpērunt.

These are  
retaken and  
put to death,  
the rest com-  
pelled to re-  
turn to Hel-  
vetia.

29. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis cōflectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulis nōminātim ratiō cōflecta erat, qui numerus domō exisset<sup>54</sup> eōrum, qui arma ferre possent,<sup>50</sup> et item sēparātim pueri, senēs, mulierēsque. Quārum omnium ratiōnum

summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum milia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum milia XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XIII, Raura-cōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt<sup>104</sup> ad milia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum, qui domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.

Baumeration of the Helvetians and their allies.



Map of Helvetia

## ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES

THE following exercises need no special vocabulary. They are based on Cæsar's text, and are graded to suit the average ability. Beginning with Chapter X, the written parts approach a story quite unlike Cæsar, yet the phraseology is still drawn from the Latin text of the corresponding chapter. A constant effort has been made to keep close to the vocabulary of the special chapter of the lesson ; but occasionally, both by purpose and necessity, words and phrases are taken from preceding chapters. These, however, are oft-recurring words, and may not be unreasonably exacted of the pupil's memory. When needful, foot-notes help to the desired word. Moreover, frequent exegetical numbers above the word refer the student, for further help, to the explanatory RULES OF SYNTAX.

The "Written Exercises" may be found too difficult for young classes, in which case easier portions only may be assigned, or entirely omitted, — the "Oral Exercises" being done in writing instead. For older classes, however, and especially for college preparatory students, the strenuous labor of the written parts in full is necessary.



*Sandalia*

## CHAPTER I

## A. ORAL WORK IN CLASS

1. The Garonne was a river in Gaul.
2. It separated the Gauls from the Aquitani.
3. The Belgæ inhabited one part of Gaul.
4. Of all the Gauls the Belgæ were bravest.
5. They were furthest distant from the civilization of the province.
6. The Germans live across the Rhine.
7. They continually wage war with the Helvetians.
8. The Helvetians often wage war in the territory of the Germans who live across the river Rhine.
9. The territory of the Gauls begins at the river Rhone.
10. They are bounded by the Garonne river, the ocean, and the territory of the Belgæ.

## B. WRITTEN WORK

It is said that there were three divisions of Gaul, which were different from one another in language and customs. Of them all, the Belgians were nearest to the Germans, in whose country they often waged war, wherefore they surpassed the rest of the Gauls in valor. The Aquitanians possessed another part which was called Aquitania, and which was near Spain. The third part was inhabited by the Celts, who were called Gauls in the tongue of the Romans, and whose territory began at the Rhone, and sloping northward reached the ocean.

## CHAPTER II

## A. ORAL WORK

1. Orgetorix was very rich.
2. Orgetorix was the most famous among the Helvetians.
3. He was influenced by a greed of royal power.

4. When Messala and Piso were consuls, he formed a plot of the nobles.
5. He easily persuaded the state.
6. The Helvetii are bounded on one side by the Rhine.
7. The river was very wide and deep.
8. It divided the Helvetian land from the Germans.
9. The Jura mountain was very high.
10. The territory of the Helvetians was bounded on a third side by Lake Geneva.
11. They did not roam about widely.
12. They were not able to make war upon their neighbors.
13. The nobles persuaded the state to leave home with all its forces.
14. They said it was <sup>as</sup> easy to become masters of the supreme power of Gaul.

#### *B. WRITTEN WORK*

Orgetorix persuaded the nobles to get possession of Gaul, because their territory, which extended about two hundred miles in length and one hundred in width, was not large. Since he surpassed the others in valor and greed, he formed a plot, when Messala and Piso were consuls, to lead a multitude of men out of their narrow boundaries.

---

### CHAPTER III

#### *A. ORAL WORK*

1. They were induced by Orgetorix.
2. These things pertain to our departure.
3. They prepare a large number of beasts of burden.
4. A supply of grain was on hand.
5. They made peace with the nearest states.

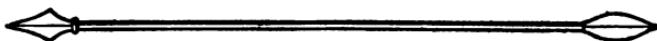
6. Three of the most powerful (men) of the Helvetians accomplished these things.
7. They deemed two years to be enough.
8. The father of Casticus had possessed the royal power many years among the Sequani.
9. He was a friend of the Roman people.
10. I shall seize the leadership which my father held before.
11. I shall persuade Dumnorix to attempt<sup>48</sup> the same in his state.
12. He gave him<sup>11</sup> his daughter in marriage.
13. They say they will<sup>47</sup> obtain the government of all Gaul.
14. There is no doubt but<sup>49</sup> what Dumnorix is<sup>50</sup> the brother of Divitiacus.

#### B. WRITTEN WORK

Induced by this speech, the three strongest nations of Gaul give the oath to one another to<sup>a</sup> make all preparations for departure, and in the third year to<sup>a</sup> leave<sup>\*</sup> their territories and win<sup>a</sup> for themselves the kingdoms across the Rhine. They determined to<sup>74</sup> select Orgetorix to<sup>b</sup> go<sup>c</sup> on an embassy to the nearest states to<sup>48</sup> persuade them to attempt the same thing. He selected Casticus, a Sequanian<sup>79</sup>, and likewise Dumnorix, an Æduan, brother<sup>79</sup> of Divitiacus. They easily achieved their efforts because the Helvetii were very powerful.

*a.* This may be considered indirect discourse or in apposition with *oath*; in either case, use the infinitive. See Rules 67, 79. *b.* Use the relative pronoun; see Rules 48, 94. *c.* Use *suscipiō*. Rule 93.

\* Occasionally simple words and expressions of preceding chapters will be used. To leave = *exire dē* of chap. 2. See Rule 95.



*Hasta*

## CHAPTER IV

## A. ORAL WORK

1. This matter was reported.
2. I shall report it.
3. He reported it to the Helvetii.
4. Orgetorix pleads his cause.
5. They compelled him to plead his case.
6. He will plead his case in chains.
7. He ought to be burned.
8. The penalty did not follow.
9. The day was fixed.
10. He had a great household.
11. He led about ten thousand men to the court.
12. He collected all his vassals and debtors from all parts.
13. He had a great number of these.
14. He will lead them all to the same place in order that he may escape.
15. The state was roused on account of this.
16. Orgetorix escaped, and there was suspicion that he died.

## B. WRITTEN WORK

On the day of the trial, he led about ten thousand men to court, and plead his case. He had a large number of vassals and debtors whom he had gathered from every quarter and had led to the trial in order that he might escape from chains. The public officers had determined to burn him, if<sup>a</sup> condemned. Through his vassals he escaped. The state was roused on this account, and, while the government was collecting men to enforce authority, Orgetorix died.

*a. See Rule of Syntax 105.*

## CHAPTER V

## A. ORAL WORK

1. They had attempted to do this.
2. They do this after his death.
3. They think they are ready.
4. When they are ready they will leave their territories.
5. They had about twelve walled towns.
6. They burned about four hundred villages.
7. They did this to take away all hope.
8. They were better prepared to undergo all dangers.
9. I shall take three months' provisions from home.
10. Each one will do the same.
11. I departed from the village after his death.
12. The Boii lived across the Rhine.
13. They were allies of the three powerful nations.
14. There is no hope of returning home.

## B. WRITTEN WORK

The Helvetii determined to take away all hope of returning home. When they were ready, they ordered each one to burn his buildings and all his grain except what he was going to take from home. There were about four hundred villages and towns. These were all burned. Their neighbors adopted<sup>a</sup> the same plan, burned<sup>b</sup> their towns, and departed with them. After<sup>c</sup> the Boii left home and crossed the Rhine into Gaul, they were persuaded<sup>b</sup> by the Helvetii to depart with them as<sup>c</sup> their allies, to each one of whom the Helvetii gave provisions for three months.

*a.* See Rule 53, *note*. *b.* See Rules 14, 30. *c.* *Socii*, Rule 79.

## CHAPTER VI

## A. ORAL WORK

1. I can leave home.
2. There are two rivers in Gaul.
3. The Rhone is narrow in some places.
4. They will not be able to go through our province.
5. Very few were in the other town.
6. The roads among the mountains were difficult.
7. They have<sup>15</sup> carts in some places.
8. I shall compel you to let me go.
9. He is not well disposed toward us.
10. The route does not seem easy.
11. It is much easier to cross by the bridge.
12. On what day shall you leave town?
13. I think I shall be<sup>16</sup> able to persuade him.
14. Every thing is ready.

## B. WRITTEN WORK

They thought they would go across the river either by a ford, because it was said that there were fords at some places in the Rhone, or by a bridge which was near<sup>17</sup> Geneva. The two routes were easy because they led through territories which had been recently pacified and were well disposed toward them. They appointed a day when they were to meet to decide by which road they might be able more easily to go.

---

## CHAPTER VII

## A. ORAL WORK

1. It was reported.
2. I shall try to do it.
3. He left the city and hastened home.<sup>18</sup>

4. We have a large number of soldiers in this city.
5. There are altogether ten thousand.
6. I shall inform him of this matter.
7. They sent an embassy to Cæsar.
8. I intend to do no harm.
9. He has obtained a place near the city.
10. Ten legions marched across the bridge.
11. I have no other home.
12. I remember the men.
13. Lucius Cassius was killed.
14. I do not think I ought to allow it.
15. He has an opportunity of making many friends.
16. I shall order them to cut down the bridge.

#### *B. WRITTEN WORK*

After he ordered them to march to the city, they informed him that<sup>66</sup> the bridge had been<sup>67</sup> cut down by the consul's army which had come to Geneva by forced marches. He decided to hasten across the Rhone by another route, because it was said that there were some fords in the river by which he could easily cross. A very large number of Roman soldiers assembled near the banks to keep him back until the consul might have time to send another legion to the ford.

---

### CHAPTER VIII

#### *A. ORAL WORK*

1. I returned from the lake by night.
2. He will give up the attempt.<sup>68</sup>
3. They will not attempt it against my will.
4. I sometimes go to the mountains.

5. When he finished the work,<sup>48</sup> he returned.
6. The wall was ten feet high.
7. I cannot appoint a day for any one.
8. The men who had assembled were driven back.
9. There are rafts on the river.
10. By these fortifications he may be able to keep them back.

### B. WRITTEN WORK

When he returned from the fortifications, which had been constructed from the lake to the river, he assured<sup>a</sup> his men that he would repulse the Roman guards if they should try to keep him back. However, after a time,<sup>b</sup> he lost all hope of marching through the province against Caesar's will, and sending an embassy to the Roman army he asked that he be permitted to do it by Cæsar's consent.

When the latter<sup>c</sup> refused, the Helvetians made many rafts, working<sup>d</sup> often by night, and tried to break through. They were driven back across the river by the charge of the Roman soldiers.

a. *Suis ostendit* (omit "men").      b. Use *spatium*.      c. Use *is*.  
d. Omit *working*.

---

## CHAPTER IX

### A. ORAL WORK

1. I can't undertake the matter.
2. He has a friend who is very powerful.
3. The people desire a revolution.
4. He will not go if his friends are unwilling.
5. I am bound by many favors.
6. He married my daughter.

7. He was very powerful in the states.
8. You are our mediator.
9. They will allow us to go.
10. He is our friend.
11. I am willing to send one friend as hostage.<sup>19</sup>
12. I can not allow it of my own will.
13. He wanted to have as many friends as possible among the Gauls.
14. His daughter kept him from the journey.

#### B. WRITTEN WORK

I could not voluntarily allow him to marry my daughter, because I knew<sup>a</sup> that he<sup>20</sup> was not a friend of Cassius, to whom I was bound by many favors. Nevertheless, I did not wish to do<sup>d</sup> him wrong, because he was a man<sup>b</sup> of great good will among his people, and had hosts<sup>c</sup> of friends in many parts of the state. One way was left for me. And so I sent Dumnorix to them as mediator, and he, after a few days, arranged matters with no offence.

*a. Use cognoscō. b. Omit man. c. Use multitudo. d. Use iniurias inferre, and see Rule 13.*

---

#### CHAPTER X

##### A. ORAL WORK

1. I shall report it to Labienus.
2. I intend to go with them.
3. The place is not far from the city.
4. There is great danger in the mountains.
5. Warlike people live there.
6. It is an unfriendly land.

7. I know that the Alps are mountains.
8. On account of these things he has enemies.
9. The land beyond the Alps is open.
10. They put Lieutenant Labienus in command of the legions.
11. On the seventh day I shall hurry across the river.
12. He was beaten in two battles.
13. They arrived in the city recently.
14. This is the last day.
15. I shall reach the banks of the river within three days, and thence go across into a hostile land.
16. The Germans were a people beyond the Rhine.
17. He led his army by the nearest route to the province.

#### B. WRITTEN WORK

The first day after my journey into Italy, I intended to go to the fortifications which were not far distant, because I had friends there, passing the winter. I myself knew it would be dangerous to go without an escort<sup>a</sup>, for in many places were warlike men who had sometimes beaten us in battle. And yet<sup>b</sup>, I determined<sup>c</sup> to go with a very few soldiers, and although<sup>d</sup> Lieut. Servus tried to keep me from the difficult undertaking, I led five soldiers with me out of camp by night, hastened across a country held<sup>d</sup> by enemies of Rome, and within two days reached the place where my friends were.

*a.* Use *praesidium*. *b.* Use *tamen* of chapter 4. *c.* Use *cōstituō* of chapter 5. *d.* Use *occupō*.



#### CHAPTER XI

##### A. ORAL WORK

1. I ought to go to Cæsar.
2. There were villages across the river.
3. He has two children left.

4. They reached the territories of the Allobroges on the seventh day.
5. The enemy was ravaging the lands of the *Ædui*.
6. And so they sent an embassy to Cæsar to ask aid.
7. They will lead an army through the narrow passes of the mountains.
8. They could not defend themselves.
9. I have at all times deserved the aid of my friends.
10. He has possessions beyond the Rhone.
11. They fled to Cæsar.
12. They showed that they were <sup>as</sup> friends.
13. I have nothing left.
14. He was induced by this to go.
15. He decided that he ought to wait.
16. The fortunes of the allies were exhausted.
17. He can't check the violence of the people.
18. The enemy led their forces away into the defiles.
19. I shall inform Cæsar.
20. The enemy is ravaging the land all the while.

#### B. WRITTEN WORK

I was almost in sight of the place, when my friends hastened to tell me that two children were being carried away by the enemy, and were by this time among the nearest defiles of the Alps. These children were relatives by blood of my friend Lucius, who was with my brother in Spain; and so I determined that I ought not to wait until I could inform him. And yet I knew it would be very dangerous<sup>a</sup> to go into the mountains without a large escort, for the enemy, it was said,<sup>d</sup> were not few<sup>b</sup>. And so I sent a messenger<sup>c</sup> to the fortifications, which were not far distant<sup>d</sup>, to ask aid.<sup>71, f</sup>.

a. Chap. 10. b. Use *perpauci*. c. Use *nūntius*, -ī. d. Chap. 1.

## CHAPTER XII

## A. ORAL WORK

1. The river Saône flows into the Rhone.
2. It flows with marvelous smoothness.
3. In what direction does it flow?
4. The Helvetians made many skiffs.
5. They will cross over with rafts.
6. He led three parts of the army across the river.
7. Scouts informed him that a fourth part was this side the Saône.
8. He set out from camp about the third watch.
9. He reached the river.
10. They had not yet crossed over.
11. A large part was killed.
12. Let<sup>44</sup> us hide in the woods.
13. He is called Cæsar.
14. I left home the next day.
15. Brutus killed Cæsar.
16. My father will avenge all wrongs.
17. They were killed in the same battle.

## B. WRITTEN WORK

When Lucius left home, he sent his two children to his father-in-law who lived<sup>d</sup> near Aquileia. By chance, the latter<sup>a</sup> departed the next day to private possessions in the open<sup>e</sup> country beyond<sup>f</sup> the walls of the town. The grandfather set out with the children, unsuspecting of danger; for it could not be supposed that there were enemies in a place so near the Roman camp.<sup>19</sup> They had almost reached the banks of the river, which was this side of his possessions, when some bandits,<sup>b</sup> who were hiding, came out of the woods, killed him, and carried the children away<sup>c</sup> to the mountains.

a. Use *is*. b. Use *latrō*, *latrōnis*, m. c. Use *abducō* of chap. 11.  
d. Use *incolō*. e. Chap. 10. f. *extrā*, with acc.

## CHAPTER XIII

## A. ORAL WORK

1. The battle was fought in one day.
2. There is a bridge over the Saône.
3. He followed the rest of the forces.
4. I shall lead an army into those places.
5. I did it with the greatest difficulty.
6. Divico was a leader in the Cassian war.
7. He cannot bring aid.
8. I remember the former valor of the Belgians.
9. He did it in one day.
10. He went into that region where the enemy was.
11. I wanted to go on this account.
12. They suddenly crossed the river.
13. I do not attribute our misfortune to his arrival.
14. They fight craftily.
15. I learned this from my father.
16. Let him not despise us.
17. They said they would go.
18. They rely upon ambuscades.

## B. WRITTEN WORK

Their father, as I have said, was in Spain at this time, and so I hastened to bear aid to his children. I knew we must fight craftily with these bandits, for the people of those districts in the mountains rely upon ambuscades rather than valor. They might <sup>a</sup> suddenly attack us, entangled <sup>a</sup> in the defiles of their region. Wherefore, my escort being small,<sup>b</sup> I did not despise the danger. On the arrival of the soldiers from the neighboring camp, we set out. We crossed the river Saône with the greatest difficulty, for there was no bridge there, and

hastened in that direction where my friends said the bandits had gone.

*a.* Use *impeditus*, and see Rule 105. *b.* Use *parvus*.



## CHAPTER XIV

### A. ORAL WORK

1. I remember what they said.
2. He mentioned it to me.
3. I am not conscious of any wrong.
4. Let us be on our guard.
5. He did not know what he had done.
6. They were deceived by the enemy.
7. I do not think I<sup>16</sup> ought to be afraid.
8. They were frightened without reason.
9. I cannot forget the insult.
10. They wanted to do it against his will.
11. He boasts arrogantly of his victory.
12. They were accustomed to allow this.
13. It will not be difficult to give hostages.
14. He will do what he has promised.
15. I know Cæsar will make peace with them.
16. He apologized to the Helvetians.
17. They are not accustomed to give hostages.
18. He was a witness of this affair.
19. They did wrong to their comrades.
20. He gave this reply and departed.
21. I shall not grant them freedom from punishment without reason.
22. What did the Roman people promise?
23. If<sup>18</sup> I wanted to forget the wrong, could I?

24. I grieved over it for a time.  
 25. Let them be on their guard.

B. WRITTEN WORK

I shall long remember that march to the mountains, across deep rivers, where there were no fords, through woods, where the enemy might be hiding, into the most difficult defiles, amidst great dangers, until<sup>a</sup> we reached<sup>a</sup> suddenly the camp of the bandits. They were excited by our arrival, and were not able to defend themselves. Some<sup>b</sup> were absent from camp, others<sup>b</sup> took to flight<sup>c</sup> into the adjoining woods. They had inflicted wrongs upon the people so long without punishment that they thought they need<sup>ss</sup> no longer fear. But they were deceived this time, and were off their guard.

As leader of our band, I spoke to them as follows :

"You were going<sup>d</sup> to carry these children away into bondage,<sup>e</sup> aware of the wrong you were doing to a friend of Gaul. I know he will grieve all the more because he does not deserve this injury. I fain would<sup>e</sup> punish you for this crime, but I will grant you impunity if you give us his children without harm.

"We have come without fear<sup>f</sup> into these deep defiles, far from home and few in number, as you see. We are not afraid. We are Romans. But let us not boast of courage. You are witnesses of this that the immortal gods have granted to us the victory."

*a.* See chap. 7. *b.* Use *aliī . . . aliī*. *c.* See chap. 12. *d.* Use First Periphrastic imperfect of *abducere*. *e.* Use proper mode and tense of *volō*. *f.* Use *timor*. *g.* See chap. 11.



*Iugum*

## CHAPTER XV

## A. ORAL WORK

1. Cæsar had collected cavalry, about <sup>77</sup> four thousand in number.
2. He sent a few allies ahead into the province.
3. The enemy pursued him into an unfavorable locality, and engaged him in battle.
4. A few of the soldiers fell.
5. They followed our rear for fifteen days.
6. Let us send horsemen to see in what direction they are marching.
7. Elated with the victory, the enemy began to stand at times more boldly.
8. They assailed our men in the rear.
9. Cæsar was satisfied for the present.
10. Woods were between the enemy's rear and our van.
11. We had not marched more than fifteen miles.
12. Cæsar kept the enemy from plundering.
13. They pursued us too eagerly.
14. The next day he moved his camp from the unfavorable spot.
15. More than five hundred fell in this battle.

## B. WRITTEN WORK

I wanted to punish the bandits, as I have said, but I considered it enough for the present to depart with the children and my few comrades without harm from that unfavorable locality. And yet, being elated by our sudden victory, I kept my men from battle with the enemy with the greatest difficulty. I saw suddenly that the bandits were beginning to collect their forces and move camp. After we had departed, we halted in a spot in dense woods, where we were hidden, and a scout was

sent to see in what direction they were marching. He reported <sup>a</sup> that they were not following our rear, but were going, about fifteen in number, further <sup>b</sup> into the mountains. Thus we had been frightened without reason, but we kept on our guard until we reached the open country <sup>c</sup>.

*a.* Use *renuntiō* of chap. 10. *b.* Use comparative of *longē*. *c.* See chap. 10.



## CHAPTER XVI

### A. ORAL WORK

1. On account of the cold the grain was not ripe.
2. They demanded a supply of fodder.
3. The river flows toward the north.
4. They promised a large army.
5. We have enough grain.
6. They were not able to use the boats, because they had turned the march aside from the Saône.
7. I do not want to leave you.<sup>25</sup>
8. The *Æduans* said that corn was being collected.
9. He was delayed longer.
10. The day was pressing on when we must undertake war.
11. There was a large number of boats on the Saône.
12. The chief magistrate among the *Ædui* was called *ver-gobretus*.
13. He was frightened because he knew the enemy was so near.
14. Divitiacus was induced <sup>26</sup> by the prayers of his people, and brought up a quantity of grain in boats on the Saône.
15. He complained because he was deserted.

### B. WRITTEN WORK

I lingered day after day in camp with my comrades <sup>a</sup>, and especially with the two little friends who, after the death of the

grandfather, were afraid<sup>b</sup>, and unwilling<sup>c</sup> for me to depart. And yet my affairs at home<sup>39</sup> kept<sup>38</sup> demanding me.

Meanwhile the day was pressing on when<sup>d</sup> I must set out to go to my home. Although the journey was so difficult, yet I decided to take the children with me, for they had neither relatives nor friends in this region<sup>e</sup>. Moreover, the soldiers were going<sup>34</sup> to move camp the next day<sup>f</sup>, and march<sup>34</sup> far towards the north. They promised us an escort, because it was said a large number of bandits was being collected from the mountains and was near by. Yet our guard was enough and we were not afraid.

In the meantime, the chief magistrate of the district<sup>g</sup>, who has power of life and death over his people, reached<sup>h</sup> the camp suddenly, and calling the soldiers together, blamed them severely because<sup>34</sup> they were not assisting him at<sup>43</sup> so critical a time<sup>43</sup> and the bandits<sup>43</sup> so near.

*a. comes, comitis*, m. f., used by Cæsar in Book VI. *b.* For the verb, see chapter 14. *c.* Use *nōlō*, and see Rule 76, b. *d.* Literally, "on which day." *e.* Translate "(in) his locis," and see Rule 39, note. *f.* See chapter 15, first sentence. *g.* *Pāgus*, *-i*, m. *h.* Use *pervenīō* of chapter 12, and see Rule 25.



## CHAPTER XVII

### A. ORAL WORK

1. There are some who are very powerful.
2. Dumnorix was wicked.
3. I can<sup>a</sup> prevent them from gathering grain.
4. He wants to gain the leadership, and wrest liberty from<sup>37</sup> the people.
5. He ought not to report our plans to the enemy.
6. I do not doubt but what he knows this.

7. It is better to gain liberty than endure the sway of the Romans.
8. What are the magistrates doing in camp?
9. I reported the exigency to Cæsar.
10. You do not know with how much danger I reported the exigency to him.
11. I cannot control them.
12. He kept silent as long as he could.

a. If this were "I cannot prevent," etc., how would the dependent clause be introduced? See Rule 8o.

#### B. WRITTEN WORK

When the soldiers had been called together, among them being Arius, who was in charge of the few troops, the magistrate spoke thus :

" You do not know with what danger I have come into your camp. You see beyond <sup>a</sup> the river a few bandits, as you say, and you think we ourselves <sup>b</sup> ought to be able to deter them from overrunning <sup>c</sup> our towns and fields without your help. If <sup>d</sup> we had been able to do this, my people would not have sent me with <sup>24</sup> their prayers to you. At last I can tell you what before the enemy have forced us to keep secret. I am Lilius, chief magistrate of all this region around you, and I have power of life and death over my people, but there are some who as private citizens are more powerful than I myself. They are collecting these bandits from the mountains and the whole country to gain preëminence and wrest liberty from my people. Wherefore I have come to you to report <sup>71</sup> this exigency and seek <sup>71</sup> help."

a. *ultrā*, prep. with the acc. b. *nōs ipsōs*. c. Use *vexō* of chapter 14. d. Rule 65.

## CHAPTER XVIII

## A. ORAL WORK

1. I feel that he means Dumnorix.
2. I am unwilling to speak while too <sup>as</sup> many are present.
3. He is in great favor with the common people.
4. Let us <sup>as</sup> ask about these things of him secretly.
5. I found out by inquiry that he was desirous of a revolution.
6. What did he say in the meeting?
7. He is a man of the greatest boldness.
8. I was among the Bituriges very many years.
9. He has bought up the taxes for very many years.
10. No one will dare to speak boldly in the meeting.
11. He has considerable private property.
12. I found out that he has a wife at home.
13. He gave his mother in marriage to a man there.
14. He has a sister on his mother's side.
15. They hate the Romans because <sup>as</sup> by their arrival their power has been lessened.
16. Cæsar was unwilling for him to be restored to his former place of honor.
17. He has the greatest hope of power and favor among his people.
18. Under the rule of the Romans he despairs of royal power.
19. The cavalry skirmish, which was fought a few days before, was unsuccessful.
20. Dumnorix, who was in command of the reinforcement, started the rout.

## B. WRITTEN WORK

*(A special exercise in changing indirect to direct discourse.)*

Arius was in charge of the meeting. He had been in those parts very many years, and had a large number of friends there. Wherefore he was fond of the people, and desired to favor

them on account of this relationship. Thus, Arius was unwilling to dismiss the meeting so quickly. He kept the magistrate, and inquired of him further concerning these matters.

The latter then spoke more freely :

" Among those who are so powerful is Dumnorix, a man of the utmost daring, and in great favor with my people because of his generosity. He is eager for a change of government. For many years he has bought up all the imposts of our district at a small price. When he bids no one dares bid against him. By this he has increased his estates. He always has around him a number of horsemen whom he supports at his own expense. He has abundant influence even among adjoining nations. For the sake of this power, he has given his mother and half-sister and other relatives in marriage to men in many places. He hates the Romans because they have put his brother into a position of honor. Under their rule, he despairs not only of royal power, but even of that favor which he now has among us. By means of his relatives and friends in town and other places, and these bandits of the mountains, he has conceived the highest hope of getting possession of the government."

Lilius, the magistrate, was silent.

Arius promised help. I left the meeting, with the children. I was in despair. I felt that this was the beginning of a great war. Home was very far away.

---

## CHAPTER XIX

### A. ORAL WORK

1. Now,<sup>89</sup> these things were found out.
2. He will lead the hostages through his brother's territory.
3. He had hostages given among the nations.
4. They did this without orders.
5. I think this is sufficient cause.

6. When Cæsar found this out, he ordered the state to punish Dumnorix.
7. Divitiacus had the utmost devotion for the Roman people.
8. He is a man of <sup>86</sup> uncommon prudence.
9. I fear <sup>90</sup> that I may offend his feelings.
10. Before he added certain things to these suspicions, he ordered a meeting to be called.
11. His friend was leader of the province.
12. Cæsar had the utmost confidence in him.
13. What was said by him in your presence?
14. State to me what each one said separately.

#### B. WRITTEN WORK

When I found out that Arius was going to <sup>84</sup> have aid sent to Lilius, I feared that he might think it to be sufficient cause why he should not give me the escort which he had promised a few days <sup>a</sup> before. So I determined to speak with him concerning it.

When I asked that I might speak with him privately, he ordered me to come to him. Before I was able to say anything, he opposed me, and said :

" You are my intimate friend, Cælius. For many years you have shown eminent loyalty and good will to me. Show it to me at this time, in this present danger. You know what the chief magistrate of the Venetici has said in your presence. Have <sup>b</sup> you no suspicions of the truth? I beg that I may speak freely, without offence to the feelings of a friend. These children are not of Lucius in Spain, but of his brother, the leader of the revolution against the government of Lilius and the Roman people. He loves <sup>c</sup> his children as a father. We shall be able to punish <sup>d</sup> him by retaining <sup>e</sup> them as hostages."

*a.* See preceding chapter. *b.* Introduce the sentence with *nōnne*.  
*c.* Use *amō*. *d.* Use *ulciscor* of chapter 14. *e.* Use gerund of *retineō* of chapter 18.

## CHAPTER XX

## A. ORAL WORK

1. I know it is true.
2. He said he knew it was true.
3. You are very powerful at home.
4. When you were very powerful on account of your generosity, I had little influence because of my youth.
5. He used his powers of mind and body<sup>a</sup> to diminish my influence.
6. They are taking rather<sup>as</sup> harsh measures against my father.
7. In tears<sup>as</sup> he embraced Cæsar.
8. We are all influenced by the opinion of people.
9. I have a brotherly love for<sup>18</sup> you.
10. No one will think it was done by my desire.
11. He is<sup>b</sup> on friendly terms with Cæsar.
12. Stop<sup>c</sup> speaking.
13. I warn you to<sup>as</sup> avoid this in the future.
14. They will pardon him because<sup>18</sup> of his brother's prayers.
15. I shall be able to know what you do<sup>as</sup>.

*a. Use opibus ac nervis. b. Use teneō. c. Be careful of the irregular imperative of faciō.*

## B. WRITTEN WORK

When Arius ceased to speak, I called the children to me to<sup>as</sup> know the truth. My love for<sup>a</sup> them had increased day by day<sup>b</sup>, and I was<sup>c</sup> pained because they had said nothing<sup>d</sup> to me concerning the matter.

After<sup>as</sup> Arius had admitted them, he declared what<sup>as</sup> the chief magistrate censured<sup>93</sup> in their father, and what the state complained of. They began to embrace me and beg that I forgive them because<sup>as</sup> they had so long kept<sup>as</sup> silent about

their father. They said their mother was dead <sup>e</sup>, that their father had another wife <sup>f</sup>, and she was bad <sup>g</sup> to them. In tears they begged of me not to turn from them. I consoled <sup>ss</sup> them and asked them to cease weeping.

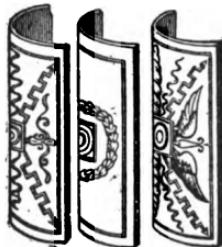
I then <sup>h</sup> grasped ARIUS' hand, and spoke:

"What you have said I know is true, yet I am stirred by love of these little ones. I beseech you to spare<sup>i</sup> them out of <sup>ss</sup> favor toward<sup>18</sup> me."

ARIUS, my intimate friend, embraced me.

"Thus<sup>j</sup> shall<sup>j</sup> it be, CÆLIUS," he said. "We shall be able to punish the father by other plans. Carry the children with you to your home beyond the mountains. Brotherly love goes with you."

*a.* Use *in* + acc., as in chapter 19. *b.* *in diēs*. *c.* Use *capiō*, as in this chapter. *d.* *nec quidquam*, or *nihil*. *e.* See chapter 4, end. *f.* See chapter 18, middle. *g.* Use *malus*, *-a*, *-um*. *h.* *tum*. *i.* Use *cōservō*, *-dre*, *-dvi*, *-dtum*. *j.* *sic estō*.





## RULES OF SYNTAX

---

**NOTE.**—References by numbers throughout the body of the texts, both Latin and English, are made to these rules. The pupil should state the rule in full in answering all questions of syntax of the day's lesson.

Occasionally, special days should be given to careful recitation of these rules, the pupils always learning the Latin examples appended, and hunting up others of like character in the text.

A mastery of these rules now will prove sufficient for the entire course in Cæsar.

The consideration of *syntax* directs the mind to the manner or habit of expression of thought, wherein it has a culture value unlike that of the study of *construction*, which looks to the statement of relation of words in a sentence. For illustration :

*ex Galliā profectus est.*

What is the construction of *Galliā*? Ans.: It is the ablative case, being introduced by the preposition *ex*.

What is the syntax of *Galliā*? Ans.: The idea of "place from which" is expressed by the ablative, in accordance with Rule 40.

### I. OF CASES

#### The Genitive

##### *A.* With nouns :—

**1. Origin, Possession, and Material** are expressed by the genitive.

*Catōnis filius est, he is Cato's son.*

or, *libra Caesaris legimus, we are reading the books of Cæsar.*

castra Ariovistū nōn aberant, *the camp of Ariovistus was not far off.*

cōpia frumenti suppetēbat, *a supply of grain was on hand.*  
or, talentum aurī habet, *he has a talent of gold.*

**2. Quality and Measure** of space and quantity are expressed by the genitive, with an accompanying adjective.

[The adjectives used chiefly are *magnus*, *summus*, *tantus*, and numerals; *ēius* may take the place of an adjective.]

vir summae virtutis est, *he is a man of the greatest courage.*

ēius modi cōsultum est, *there is a decree of this sort.*

mūrūm sēdecim pedum perducit, *he constructs a wall sixteen feet (high).*

trium mēnsium frumentum extulerunt, *they took away three months' supply of corn.*

**3. Subjective Genitive** denotes the person who makes or produces something, or who has a feeling.

[The test of this construction is its possible expansion into a sentence of which the genitive is the *subject*; if it is rather the *object*, it falls under Rule 4; e.g., *test amor patris, odium Cæsaris, timōrēs liberōrum.* Sometimes this construction is explained also by other rules.]

Catalinae verba audīvit, *he heard Catiline's words.*

**4. Objective Genitive** denotes the object of an action or feeling.

domum reditōnis spēs sublāta est, *hope of returning home was removed.*

Cicerō laudātor temporis acti erat, *Cicero was a praiser of the past.*

**5. Partitive Genitive** denotes that of which a part is taken.

[NOTE: *Cardinals* and *quīdam* regularly take the ablative, with *ē (ex)*; e.g., *ūnus ex miliūbus, quīdam ex lēgātīs.*]

**māgnūm mīlitūm numerūm imperat, he levies a large number of soldiers.**

**satis causae est, it is sufficient reason.**

**ēius reī populū Rōmānū esse testēm dīcit, he says the Roman people are witness of this thing.**

**6. Appositional Genitive.** A genitive is sometimes used like a noun in apposition. [See Rule 79.]

**nōmen amīcī populī Rōmānī longē aberit, the name of friend of the Roman people will not avail.**

**B. With adjectives:—**

**7. Genitive of Reference, or Specification.** Some adjectives require a genitive to specify or limit their application.

[Such adjectives are those meaning *desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, sharing, guilt*, and their opposites.]

**peritus belli est, he is skilled in war.**

**avidus laudis est, he is greedy of praise.**

**C. With verbs:—**

**8. Remembering, Forgetting, Reminding** take the object in the genitive when they signify a *continued state of mind*; the accusative when used of a *single act*.

[The verbs used mostly are **memini**, **reminiscor**, and **obliviscor**. Test the following as to case: "The old man remembers the past"; "I recall the fact"; "He remembers the living"; "He forgot the matter."]

**Sullam memini, I recall Sulla.**

**vivōrum memini, I remember the living.**

**9. Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting** take the genitive of the charge and the ablative of the *penalty*.

[The verbs used mostly are **accūsō**, **argūō**; **damnō**, **coargūō**; **absolvō**. Test: "He accuses me of theft" (theft = **fūrtūm**, -**i**);

"He was condemned for embezzlement" (embezzlement = *peculātus, -ūs*]).

*impietatis absolvitus est, he was acquitted of blasphemy.*

**10. Verbs of Feeling or Emotion** take the genitive of the object which causes the feeling — often with the accusative of the person affected.

[This includes *miseror* and *miserescō*; and the impersonals, *pudet*, *paenitet*, *miseret*, *taedet*, *piget*.]

*miserescit hominī, pity the being.*

*pudet mē tui, I am ashamed of you.*

### The Dative

*A. General use:—*

**11. Indirect Object.** The commonest use is that of the indirect object of both transitive and intransitive verbs to denote the person to whom something is *given, said, or done*.

*Dumnorīgī filiam suam dedit, he gave his daughter to Dumnorix.*

*Cæsari respondit, he replied to Cæsar.*

*B. Special uses:—*

**12. Intransitive Verbs**, meaning to *favor, help, please, trust, and their opposites*; also, to *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare*, take an indirect object in the dative.

*eis persuāsīt, he persuaded them.*

*hūic legiōnī cōfidēbat, he trusted this legion.*

**13. Compound Verbs.** Most verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con* (= *cum*), *in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super* take the dative of the indirect object.

**NOTE:** If the verb is transitive, it may thus govern a double ob-

ject, one accusative (direct), the other dative; e. g., **Labiēnum exer-citūl praeſēcit**, *he put Labienus in command of the army.*

**huic legiōnī praeſuit**, *he was in command of this legion.*

**14. In the Passive.** Verbs which govern the dative are used *impersonally* when put in the passive voice, the dative remaining unchanged.

**Caesarī respondētur**, *Cæsar is answered.*

**hīs persuādētur**, *they are persuaded.*

**15. Possession.** The dative is used with *esse* and similar meanings to emphasize the fact of possession.

[NOTE: Compare Rule 1, which emphasizes the possessor. Avoid *habeō*, unless expression of the idea of retention is desired.]

**mihi est canis**, *I have a dog.*

**16. The Agent.** The dative is used with the *gerundive* to denote the one who, under moral obligation or necessity, must fulfill the action expressed by the verb.

[NOTE: This combination of *gerundive* and tenses of *esse* forms the conjugation described in Rule 85.]

**mihi agendum est**, *I must do it.*

**17. Service** is expressed by the dative, usually with another dative of the person concerned.

**māgnō ūſui nostrīs fuit**, *it was of great service to our men.*

**18 Reference.** The dative of reference denotes the one who has some concern or interest in the matter.

[NOTE: This dative has little or no special grammatical dependence, but rather modifies the whole thought.]

**quid mihi Cæsar agit?** *I am interested in this matter.*  
*What is Cæsar doing?*

**19. With Adjectives.** Adjectives of *likeness, fitness, near-*

ness, service, and their *opposites*, often take the dative to specify their application.

**sunt proximi Germānīs, they are nearest to the Germans.**

*Addendum : Separation* (see Rule 87).

### The Accusative

**20. Double Object—Same Person.** Many verbs of *making, choosing, calling, showing*, and the like, take two accusatives of the same person or thing — one a direct object, the other a predicate accusative, like an appositive.

**Pisōnum cōnsulem creāvērunt, they chose Piso consul.**

**21. Double Object—Person and Thing.** *Asking, demanding, teaching, concealing*, admit two accusatives — one of the person, the other of the thing.

[NOTE: The verbs used mostly are *rogō, postulō, doceō, cēlō*. Here belong also *moneō, cōgō, accūsō, argūō*, which are restricted to a pronoun or adjective object of the thing.]

**tē sententiam rogō, I ask you your opinion.**

**haec Caesarem cēlāvit, he concealed this from Caesar.**

**22. Double Object** — with compound verbs. Verbs in composition with prepositions, usually *trāns*, sometimes *ad*, and others, may take two accusative objects — one dependent upon the verb, the other upon the preposition.

[NOTE: The preposition is often repeated.]

**legiōnēs pontem trādūxit, he led the legions across the bridge.**

**23. Time and Space.** The accusative is used to express *duration of time*, and *extent of space*.

**multōs annōs in Italiā fuit, he was in Italy many years.**

**flūmen passūs sēscēntōs abest, the river is six hundred paces distant.**

24. **Exclamation** is written in the accusative.

ō fōrtūnātam rempublicam! *O fortunate republic!*

25. **Limit of Motion** is expressed by the accusative, usually with the prepositions *ad* or *in*.

[NOTE: The preposition is omitted with names of *towns*, *small islands*, *domum*, and *rūs*.]

*in prōvinciam pervaenit*, *he reached the province.*

*Rōmam vēnit*, *he came to Rome.*

but, *ad oppidum Genāvam vēnit*.

26. **Subject of the Infinitive** is in the accusative.

[NOTE: See Rule 72.]

### The Ablative

[NOTE: There were originally in Latin at least seven cases. Two of these, called conveniently the *locative* and the *instrumental*, were afterward dissolved, their uses being assigned to other cases, especially to the ablative. Thus we may easily classify the following kinds of ablative as "Original Ablative" or the *from* case, the "Instrumental Ablative" or the *with* case, and the "Locative Ablative" or the *where* case.]

*A. Original ablative uses:—*

27. **Separation** or privation is expressed by the ablative, usually without the preposition. (See Rule 87.)

*hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt*, *they desisted from this attempt.*

*armis hostēs dēspoliāt*, *he deprives the enemy of arms.*

28. **Source.** The verbs meaning *birth* or *origin* are followed by the ablative.

[NOTE: These are usually the participles, *nātus* and *ortus*.]

*Belgæ ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur*, *the Belgæ begin at the extreme territories of Gaul.*

*nōbili genere nātus est*, *he was born of a noble race.*

**29. Cause** is expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.

*victoriā suā glōriantur, they boast of their victory.*

**30. Personal Agent.** The ablative with *ā* or *ab* is used with a verb in the passive voice to express a *personal agent*.

[NOTE: When the person is regarded as instrument or means of the action, it is written with *per* and the accusative.]

*Galli ā Rōmānīs superāti sunt, the Gauls were conquered by the Romans.*

*per indiciū ēnūntiātūm est, it was reported through an informer.*

**31. With Comparatives.** The ablative is used after adjectives in the comparative degree, with the sense of *than*.

[NOTE: This is a substitute for *quam*, when the adjective is either nominative or accusative.]

*rēx est potentior cōsule, a king is more powerful than a consul.*

#### *B. Instrumental Ablative uses:—*

**32. Instrument or Means** is expressed by the ablative, without a preposition.

*Garumna flūmine continētur, it is bounded by the Garonne river.*

**33. Accompaniment** is expressed by the ablative with *cum*.

[NOTE: In military phrases the preposition may be omitted if the ablative has a modifying adjective.]

*cum his legiōnibus ire contendit, he hastened to go with these legions.*

*omnibus cōpīis profectus est, he departed with all his troops.*

**34. Manner** is expressed by the ablative with *cum* or *sine*.

[NOTE: The preposition may be omitted if the ablative has a modifying adjective. Also, distinct words of manner, like *modō*, *rationē*, *fugā*, etc., do not need the preposition.]

**cum celeritāte profectus est, he set out swiftly.**

**35. Special Verbs.** *Utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their compounds, take an indirect object in the ablative.

[NOTE: *Potior* may take the genitive instead; e.g., *sēsē Galliae potūrī spērant* (chapter 3, last line).]

**eōdem cōnaliō ūsī sunt, they adopted the same plan.**

**36. Quality** is expressed by the ablative, if modified by an adjective.

[NOTE: See Rule 2.]

**summā audāciā erat, he was a man of the utmost daring.**

**37. Price** is written in the ablative.

**aedificium parvō pretiō redēmit, he bought the building at a small price.**

**38. Specification.** The ablative expresses that *in respect to* which or *in accordance with* which something is or is done.

**virtūte praeceđunt, they surpass in courage.**

### C. Locative Ablative uses:—

**39. Place where** is expressed by the ablative, usually with *in*.

[NOTE: The preposition is sometimes omitted with *locō*, *castris*, *parte*; all words modified by *tōtus*; most names of towns. Here belongs also a remnant of the old locative case, as in the following: *Rōmae*, at Rome; *Rhōdī*, at Rhodes; all towns in the singular of the first and second declensions; *domī*, at home; *militiae*, abroad.]

**in Galliā est, he is in Gaul.**

**nōnnūllis locis vada sunt, there are fords in some places.**

**40. Place from which** is expressed by the ablative, usually with *ā* or *ab*, *ē* or *ex*.

[NOTE: In this is the familiar exception of names of *towns*, etc., as before stated, without the preposition.]

*ex finibus exeunt*, *they go out from their territories*.

*Rōmā vēnit*, *he came from Rome*.

**41. Time when** is expressed by the ablative, without a preposition.

[NOTE: Closely allied to this are expressions which are both time and place. These take the preposition *in*; e.g., *in pace*.]

*ēa diē conveniunt*, *they assemble on that day*.

**42. Time within which** is expressed by the ablative, with or without a preposition.

*in tertīō annō exibunt*, *they will go out within three years*.

**43. Ablative Absolute.** Independent constructions, consisting commonly of a noun or pronoun and a modifying adjective or participle, often take the place of subordinate clauses of *time*, *cause*, *condition*, and *concession*.

[NOTE: In accordance with the aforesaid meanings, the student should avoid its literal translation, and render by the appropriate English clause.]

Let the student select from the abundance of such constructions in the text examples of the four principal ideas of the ablative absolute.

*Addendum* : Degree of Difference (see Rule 81).

## II. SYNTAX OF MODES

### In Independent Sentences

[NOTE: The mode in independent sentences is regularly *indicative*. The following exceptions are important:

**44. Hortatory Subjunctive.** The subjunctive is used in the present tense to express exhortation (*urging*) or command.

**hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus, let us kill these bandits.**  
**haec dīcat, let him say this.**

**45. Potential Subjunctive** expresses possibility.

**dīcat aliquis, some one may say.**

**46. Optative Subjunctive** expresses a wish, usually preceded by *utī* or *utinam*.

**falsum utinam sit, I hope it is false.**

**47. Dubitative Subjunctive** expresses doubt or deliberation, and indignation.

[NOTE: This is interrogative in form, but rhetorically declarative.]

**quid dīcerem, what was I to say ?**

### Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses

[NOTE: For "Sequence of Tenses" see Rule 93.]

**48. Purpose** is written in the subjunctive, usually after *ut* or *nē*, and the *relative* pronoun.

[NOTE: The student is sometimes inclined to confuse this with the idea of *result*; e.g., in chapter 6, book I, from *vel* to *paterentur*. In the explanation of the syntax of this particular passage even eminent commentators disagree. One authority calls it *result*, another, *purpose*. The test usually applicable is this: "Is the action of the main verb directed toward the future?" If so, the idea is rather *purpose*.]

For other ways of expressing purpose, see Rules 71 and 78.

The student should translate the clause of purpose by the English infinitive.]

**lēgatiōnēs mīait ut agrōs vāstārent, he sent the legions to lay waste the fields.**

**49. Result** is written in the subjunctive, usually after *ut* or *ut nōn*, and the *relative* pronoun.

[NOTE: If the main clause is negative, *quān* usually takes the place of *ut nōn* (see Rule 80).]

**mōns impendēbat ut trānsire nōn possent, a mountain overhung so that they could not go across.**

**50. Characteristic.** Occasionally, the logical connection of a *relative* clause is to define some quality or characteristic of its antecedent. This is called a "relative clause of characteristic," and is written in the subjunctive. Otherwise, the mode is indicative.

[NOTE: The test of mode may be this: May the words "of the sort that" be reasonably inserted before the relative, then the clause is *characteristic*.]

Three of the following are of characteristic. Find them: "There were some who pitied Cæsar"; "Let us compel a peace which shall have no plots"; "There are studies which sharpen the wits"; "This is He who is called King of the Jews."]

**51. Cum Causal.** *Cum* often introduces a clause of cause, the verb of which is subjunctive.

**quae cum ita sint, now, since this is so, . . .**

**52. Cum Concessive.** *Cum*, in the sense of "though," introduces a clause of concession, whose verb is subjunctive. The main verb usually has *tamen*.

**cum primi concidissent, tamen reliqui resistēbant, though the first had fallen, yet the rest resisted.**

**53. Relative Time — Cum.** *Cum*, in the sense of "while" and "after," introduces a clause of relative time, whose verb is subjunctive.

[NOTE: The tenses are imperfect, to express "while"; pluperfect, "after."]

**cum Caesar in Galliā esset, while Cæsar was in Gaul.**

**cum Caesar in Galliam pervenisset, after Cæsar had arrived in Gaul.**

**54. Quod Causal.** *Quod, quia, quoniam*, all meaning "since," often introduce reasons which are given on another's authority, not that of the writer or speaker.

[NOTE: By this use, the writer disclaims all responsibility. The reason being thus indirectly quoted, the clause is properly subject to the rules of indirect discourse. See Rule 68.]

**quod sit dēstitūtus queritur**, *he complains because, as he says, he has been deserted.*

**55. Dum, Dōnec, Quoad** sometimes take the indicative of actual event in the past, but often their idea is of *purpose, doubt, futurity* of a contingent event. The mode is then subjunctive.

[NOTE: Test this for mode: "I was happy until he came."]

**Caesar exspectāvit dum nāvēs conveniērent**, *Cæsar waited until the ships should assemble.*

**56. Indirect Question.** The indirect quotation of a direct question is in the subjunctive.

[NOTE: The question is made the object of a verb of *asking, telling*, and the like.]

**quid sentiō, what do I think?**

**quid ipse sentiam expōnam, I will explain what I think.**

*Addendum: Subjunctive of Fearing.* (See Rule 90.)

### Special Functions of the Indicative

**57. Cum Temporal—Present.** When *cum* introduces a clause of time in the *present* or the *future*, it takes the indicative.

**cum vidēbis, tum sciēs, when you see, then you will know.**

**58. Absolute Time—Cum.** *Cum*, in the sense of "when," sometimes merely defines the *time* in the past at which something was or was done. It then takes the indicative mode of "absolute time."

[Note: For "relative time," *i.e.*, defining the *circumstances* or *conditions* under which something was or was done, see Rule 53.]

**pāruit cum pārēre necesse erat, he obeyed when it was necessary.**

**59. Absolute Time — Other Conjunctions.** *Postquam* or *posteāquam*, after: *ut, ubi*, when or whenever; *cum prīmum, simul, simul ac, simul atque*, as soon as, introduce clauses of absolute time, and take the indicative.

[Note: The tense is usually perfect or "historical" present, although *ut* and *ubi*, in the sense of "whenever," take the pluperfect.]

**Cæsar, cum prīmum potuit, ad exercitum contendit, as soon as he was able, Cæsar hastened to the army.**

**id ubi dīxisset, hastam mittēbat, whenever he said this, he hurled a spear.**

**60. Causal.** The conjunctions *quod, quia, quoniam, quando* usually take the indicative of cause.

[Note: For exception, see Rule 54.]

**quod altissimi sunt mūri, Caesar multōs dīēs morābitur, because the walls are very high, Cæsar will linger many days.**

### Conditional Sentences

[Note: There is a two-fold classification of conditions; the one, called "simple," offering no hint of the truth or falsity of the condition; the other necessitating a distinct supposition of the fulfilment or non-fulfilment of the condition. For purpose of distinction, we may call the latter kind "complex," since it is varied in form, and requires perhaps more careful analysis.

There are two parts in every complete conditional sentence; the one, called *protasis*, being subordinate and containing the condition; the other, called *apodosis*, containing the conclusion.

The conjunctions usually employed to introduce the protasis are

*sī*, if ; *nisi*, unless ; *sīn*, but-if. The apodosis is often introduced by *sīc*, *ita*, *tum*.

Often the protasis is omitted, but implied, and sometimes the whole structure is mixed and confusing.]

**61. Simple Condition.** If the protasis offers no means to enable one to determine its truth or falsity, the condition is called simple, and the mode of both parts is indicative.

[NOTE: The English sentence above is an illustration of such a condition. See Rule 68.]

*sī fortis est eum laudō, if he is brave, I praise him.*

**62. Future Condition** — “More Vivid.” If the future fulfilment of the condition is regarded as *probable*, that is, as actually going to happen, the future indicative is used in both clauses.

[NOTE: The future perfect is used in the protasis if its accomplishment is to precede the result.]

*sī pūgnābit, tum eum laudābō, if he fights, then I shall praise him.*

*Caesar pācem faciet, sī hostēs obaidēs dederint, Cāesar will make peace if the enemy will have surrendered hostages.*

**63. Future Condition** — “Less Vivid.” If the fulfilment of the condition is regarded as *improbable*, the present subjunctive is used in both clauses.

*mentiar, sī negem, I should lie if I should deny it.*

**64. Contrary to Fact** — Present. Often the supposition is known to be false, then the imperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses, when the condition still exists.

*sī amicī meī adessent, laetus essem, if my friends were present, I would be happy.*

**65. Contrary to Fact** — Past. In a known false condition of past time, the pluperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses.

**nisi tū amissēs, nunquam recōpiassem,** unless you had lost it, I should never have recovered it.

### Indirect Discourse

**66. Indirect Discourse** is the expression of another's thoughts without regard for his exact words.

[NOTE: The incalculable advantage of this device of speech was slow to occur to the human mind. It is comparatively recent in the history of language, being found for the first fully developed in the Greek and Latin. Of the earlier tongues, only the Sanscrit has the germ of it. To-day, in common speech, it is universal.

For an extended illustration of the application of the following rules in the change of discourse, see the text of chapter 17, second part.]

**67. The Infinitive.** The main verb of the direct discourse becomes infinitive when written indirectly.

[NOTE: The infinitive clause is always the object of a verb—whether present or implied—of *saying, telling, etc.*]

**miles est fortis** (direct).

**dixit militem esse fortem** (indirect).

**68. Subordinate Clauses** are regularly subjunctive in indirect discourse.

[NOTE: Sometimes the student will find them indicative; the clause may then be regarded as an insertion of the writer or speaker—as given on his own authority—and hence not an integral part of the quotation.]

Let the pupil select examples from the text.

**69. Real Questions** become subjunctive in indirect discourse.

[NOTE: "Real" questions, which are used to obtain information, are opposed to "rhetorical" questions, which are really declarative in meaning. The latter are treated as declarative, and thus fall under Rule 67; as in chapter 14, sixth sentence, *quod . . . posse.*]

**quid tibi vis?** *what do you wish?*

**Ariovistus Caesari respondit: quid sibi vellet,** *Ariovistus asked Cæsar what he wanted.*

**70.** The **Imperative** becomes subjunctive in indirect discourse.

[**NOTE:** The negative remains *nē*. Chapter 13 contains several illustrations.]

**Divicō Caesari dixit: nē suae virtūtē tribueret,** *Divico told Cæsar not to attribute it to his (Cæsar's) valor.*

(Let the student give the original command in the last sentence.)

**70a. Addendum:** Tenses in indirect discourse, see Rule 93.

### III. ADDENDA

**71. Purpose Constructions.** There are found eight distinct ways of expressing the idea of purpose. Of the following, the first two are the most common, and the first six not infrequent. The seventh is used only after intransitive verbs. The last is quite rare, late, and not in Cicero.

In all of them, the purpose construction is best translated into English by the infinitive; as, "to attack the city" (see *Note* in Rule 48).

*a.* By *ut*, etc. (see Rule 48).

*b.* By the *relative* clause (Rule 48).

*c.* By *ad* and the *gerundive*.

*venērunt ad urbēm oppūgnāndam.*

*d.* By *causā* and the genitive of the *gerund*, or the genitive of a noun or pronoun.

*venērunt urbēm oppūgnāndī causā.*

*e.* By *causā* and the genitive of the *gerundive*.

*venērunt urbīs oppūgnāndae causā.*

- f. By the *supine* in *-um*, after verbs of motion.  
*venērunt urbem oppūgnātūm.*
- g. By *ad* and the *gerund*, after intransitive verbs.  
*venērunt ad urbem oppūgnāndūm.*
- h. By the *future participle*.  
*venērunt urbem oppūgnātūrī.*

**72. Historical Infinitive.** Sometimes, to give the impression of rapid movement of events in narration, the infinitive is used instead of a past indicative.

[NOTE: Its subject is nominative; see Rule 26.  
 For example, see the text of chapter 16, first sentence, *flāgitāre.*]

**73. Superlative of Eminence** denotes a very high degree of a quality, when no distinct comparison is present.

*Rhēnus altissimus est, the Rhine is very deep* (chapter 2).

**73a. Note:** With *quam* or *vel*, the superlative denotes the very highest possible degree; as,

*quam maximae cōpiae adsunt, as many troops as possible are present.* (See, also, chapter 7.)

**74. Complementary Infinitive** expresses an additional action or state of the same subject, thus completing the meaning of the main verb.

*Rōmā proficisci mātūrat, he hastens to depart from Rome.*

[NOTE: Let the pupil analyze this sentence with careful reference to the above definition.]

**75. The Latter Supine** (in *-ū*) is used with certain adjectives, nouns, and verbs, as an ablative of specification.

[NOTE: The adjectives commonly found are those meaning *easy* or *difficult*, and those with reference to effects produced on the *senses* or *feelings*. The verbs found are about twenty-five in number,

and include prominently *auditū, dictū, factū*. The nouns are *fās, nefas, opus.*]

*perfacile factū est, it is very easy to do* (literally, *it is very easy with respect to the doing*—see Rule 38).  
*foeda sunt auditū, it is shocking to hear.*

**76. Infinitive as Subject or Object.** These are the usual constructions of the infinitive. For an exception as to use, see Rule 72.

*a. As Subject:* The predicate is usually some form of *esse* or an *impersonal* verb; as,

*eum poenam sequi oportet, the penalty ought to follow him.*

*b. As Object:* This use is of a two-fold kind: the one, described in Rule 74; the other being chiefly that described in Rule 67, note.

In addition, the following verbs take the infinitive as direct object: *iubeō*, to order; *vetō*, to forbid; *patior* and *sinō*, to allow; *volō, nōlō, mālō, cupiō*; as,

*signa inferri iubet, he orders the standards to be advanced.*

**77. The Preposition Ad**, with the accusative, expresses the idea of "near," in number or place.

*oppida sua, numerō ad duodecim, incendunt, they burn their towns, about twelve in number.*

*pōns ad Genāvam erat, there was a bridge near Geneva.*

**78. Quō** introduces a clause of purpose, when the clause contains a comparative.

*castella commūnit, quō facilius eōs prohibēre possit, he fortifies redoubts in order to check them the more easily (chapter 8).*

**79. Apposition.** A noun which closely follows and explains another noun agrees with the latter in case, and is called an "appositive."

**opera Ciceronis oratōris legimus, we are reading the works of Cicero, the orator.**

**80. Quin** introduces a clause of result after *negativated* ideas of "doubt," "hinder," "prevent," and "resist."

[NOTE: The following are common in this construction: *dubium est, impediō, dēterreō*. An exception to this, usually, is *prohibeō*, which takes an infinitive object, instead of the *quin* clause. For example, see Rule 86.]

**nōn dubium est quin hōc fēcerit, there is no doubt he has done this.**

**nihil impedit quin veniat, nothing hinders his coming.**

**81. Degree of Difference.** The ablative is used with comparatives and words denoting comparison to express measure or degree of difference.

[NOTE: The words of comparison usually found are *post, ante, infra, suprā*.]

**proelium paucis ante diēbus factum est, a battle was fought a few days before** (chapter 18, last sentence).

**82. Predicate Noun or Adjective** is one used after *esse*, or similar meanings, to complete the sense, and agreeing with the subject in case.

**populus Rōmānus testis est, the Roman people is witness.**  
**flūmen est lātum, the river is wide.**

**83. Coördinate Participle.** The perfect passive participle is sometimes used when the English would rather employ a coördinate clause.

**Caesar suās legiōnēs coāctās praemisit, Caesar collected his legions and sent them forward.**

**84. Periphrastic Conjugation — Active.** The future participle may be combined with all forms of *esse* to denote what is or was likely or going to happen at any time.

**castra mōtūrī erant, they were going to move camp.**

**85. Periphrastic Conjugation — Passive.** The gerundive may be combined with all forms of *esse* to denote moral obligation and necessity.

For further explanation and example, see Rule 16.

**86. The Imperfect Tense.** Besides its regular significance of continued past state or action, the imperfect expresses the ideas of *habitual*, *repeated*, and *attempted* action.

[NOTE: The latter use is called the "conative."]

*ad montēs ibam, I used to go to the mountains.*

*frumentum flāgitābat, he repeatedly demanded grain.*

*hostēs nostrōs prōgreḍī prohibēbant, the enemy tried to keep our men from advancing*

[NOTE: For the construction with *prohibēbant*, see Rule 80, note.]

**87. Personal Separation.** The dative of persons is used as the indirect object of verbs of "taking away" and the like, the thing taken being made the accusative object.

[NOTE: Compare this with Rule 27, in which the person is the direct object.]

*nihil tibi dētrāxit senectūs, old age has taken nothing from you.*

**88. The Comparative** has sometimes a special significance in expressing the idea of a *considerable* or *undue* degree of a quality, and may then be translated by "rather," "somewhat," "too."

*senectūs est loquācior, old age is rather talkative.*

*iuventūs est audācior, youth is too bold.*

**89. Copulative Relative.** Sometimes the relative pronoun begins a sentence, and serves to connect it closely to the preceding narrative.

*quae omnia ab his facta sunt, now, all these things were done by them.*

[NOTE: Let the pupil notice that the relative is then translated by "now" and a *demonstrative* pronoun.]

**90. Verbs of Fearing** take the subjunctive with *nē*, "lest," and *ut*, "that not."

[NOTE: This apparent anomaly in the use of the conjunction is explained by the fact that originally the subordinate clause was regarded as an independent optative subjunctive.—See Rule 46.]

*timeō nē veniat, I fear he will come* (originally, "I am afraid. May he not come!").

**91. Future Infinitive Periphrasis.** Verbs which have no supine lack the future infinitive. Hence a substitute is necessary. Usually this substitute is also used instead of the regular infinitive in the passive voice of any verb. The substitute is *fore ut* or *futūrum esse ut*, with a subjunctive of result.

*spērō fore ut tē paeniteat levitātis, I hope you will repent of your fickleness.*

*spērō futūrum esse ut hostēs vincantur, I hope the enemy will be conquered.*

[Let the student translate: "Cæsar said he would demand hostages," using the verb *poscō*.]

**92. Tenses of the Infinitive** in indirect discourse may be readily determined by returning the discourse to its original direct speech. This shows the original tense, and the infinitive must preserve it. The only difference is in the past tenses, in which case the perfect infinitive serves a threefold use—representing the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect tenses.

[Let the student follow the above direction, and determine the tenses of the infinitives in the following:—

"He says that he has come."

"He said that he would come."

"He will say that he came."

"He saw that the soldiers were brave."

"He thought that the enemy had gone."]

**93. Sequence of Tenses.** In complex sentences, a "principal" tense of the main clause is followed by a "principal" tense of the subordinate clause; an "historical" tense is likewise followed by an "historical."

[NOTE: The "principal" tenses are those denoting present and future time, embracing the *present, future, present perfect*, and *future perfect*. The "historical" tenses are those denoting past time, embracing the *imperfect, historical perfect*, and *pluperfect*, and often an "historical" present.

Let the pupil examine various complex sentences in the text, with reference to the foregoing law.]

**94. Subjunctive by Attraction.** Sometimes a verb which would regularly be indicative is written in the subjunctive under the influence of the infinitive or subjunctive verb upon which it depends, especially when the two clauses form one complex idea.

For example, see chapter 27, second sentence, *quō tum essent*.

**95. Ā, ab, dē (dis), ē, and ex,** in composition with verbs, take the ablative without a preposition if the idea of separation is figurative; in literal or actual separation or motion the preposition accompanies the ablative.

[NOTE: See Rules 27 and 40, of which this is a part.]

*cōnātū dēsistunt, they desist from the attempt.*

*dē prōvinciā dēcessit, he withdrew from the province.*

**96. Imperfect vs. Historical Perfect.** The imperfect is the tense of description; the perfect, of narration. The former describes a situation; the latter advances the narration of events.

**97. Hendiadys** is a figure of syntax consisting of two nouns in coördinate construction, one of which is logically dependent.

*fidem et iūs iūrandū dant, they give the oath of allegiance.*

**98. Dative with Special Verbs.** The dative is used as the object of *libet*, *licet*, and compounds of *satis*, *bene*, and *male*.

*id nobis facere licet, we are allowed to do this.*

*mihi ipse nunquam satisfaciō, I never satisfy myself.*

**99. Personal Instrument or Means** is expressed by *per* with the accusative.

*Caesar certior factus est per lēgātōs, Caesar was informed through envoys.*

**100. Substantive Clauses** are those which are used like nouns, as subject or object, or in apposition.

[**NOTE:** Such clauses are usually *infinitive*, *subjunctive* of purpose or result, *indicative* with **quod**, *indirect question*.]

For example, see chapter 10, second sentence, *ut . . . habēret.*]

**101. Greek Accusative.** The *synecdochical* or Greek accusative of specification is found in Latin — frequently in poetry, occasionally in prose.

Examples in prose: —

*id temporis, as to that time.*

*quod si, but if* (literally, *as to which, if*).

**102.** The genitive occurs with *causā*, *grātiā*, “for the sake of”; *ergō*, “because of”; *instar*, “like”; *priōdīē*, “the day before”; *postridīē*, “the day after”; *tenus*, “as far as.”

Authorities differ in the technical assignment of this genitive; some call it simply “subjective,” others “partitive.” Logically neither seems wholly satisfactory.

**103. The Adjectival Partitive.** Superlatives and some comparatives of adjectives expressing the idea of order, rank, or succession, also *medius*, *cēterus*, and *reliquus*, mean not *what object*, but *what part of it*.

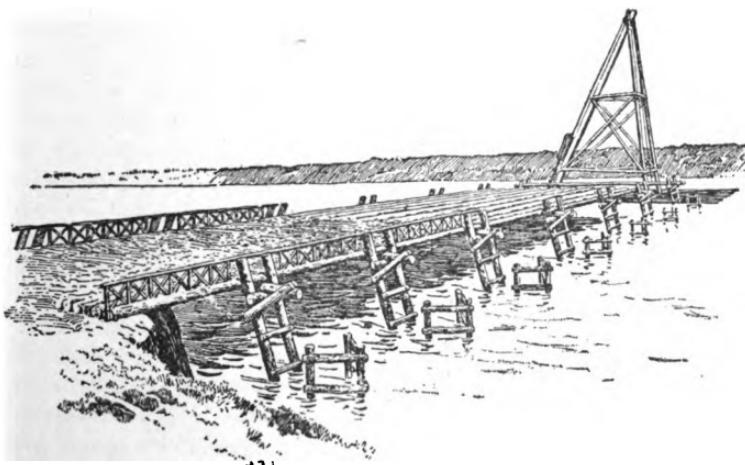
*primā nocte, in the first part of the night.*

**104. Logical Agreement of the Verb.** Sometimes the verb agrees not with its grammatical subject, but with the subject appositive or a predicate noun, serving as the *logical* subject.

**summa omnium fuērunt**, *they were in all.*

**105. The Adjectival Participle.** The participle is often the equivalent of a subordinate clause or phrase, expressing *time, cause, condition, concession, manner, and means.*

**damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat**, *if condemned, he must suffer punishment.*



*Pōns a Caesare in Rhēnō factus*



## NOTES

---

### BEING MAINLY GEOGRAPHICAL AND HISTORICAL

**Caesaris commentarii** is the proper title of the complete account of Cæsar's campaigns as proconsul of Gaul, from the spring of 58 B.C., when on his arrival he began his operations against the Helvetii, to 52 B.C., when he won his memorable victory over Gaul, united under the intrepid Vercingetorix, "the greatest of the Gauls, the first national hero of France." These seven campaigns were written by Cæsar himself, and the account is popularly called the "seven books of the Gallic war." Each "book" is a concise chronicle of one year. The short interim, from the fall of the town of Alesia in 52, when, as Plutarch says, "Vercingetorix came out of the gate, threw off his armor, and sat quietly at Cæsar's feet," to the last futile rally of the Gauls in the southwest, is narrated in the eighth and final book by one of Cæsar's officers and friends, Hirtius Pansa.

As present and indubitable testimony of the fact of these closing experiences of the great commander, it is pertinent to state here that about 1865 the government of France made extensive investigations on the site of old Alesia, and in these excavations innumerable relics and traces of the siege were found. Camps, redoubts, trenches, staked pits, and coins, swords, spear-heads and other articles, testify not alone to the truth but the accuracy of Cæsar's account of this siege, which is "one of the most remarkable on record, and which may well rank among the decisive military operations of the world's history."

### SUPPLEMENTARY READING ON THE BELLUM HELVETICUM

Froude's Cæsar, pp. 214-231.

Fowler's Julius Cæsar, Chap. 8.

Guizot's History of France, Vol. I, pp. 47-51.  
Merivale's History of Rome, Vol. I, pp. 237-262.  
Mommsen's History of Rome, Vol. IV, pp. 289-295.  
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II, Ch. 3.  
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.  
Trollope's Cæsar's Commentaries, Chap. 2.

## THE HELVETIAN WAR

### CHAPTER I

**Gallia**, or Gaul, may be regarded roughly as the region now covered by France. More particularly, it was the section of continental Europe west of the Alps and the Rhine, including Switzerland, and north of the Pyrenees mountains. To this may be added the land below the Alps, which Cæsar calls *Gallia citerior*, and which the northern tribes of Europe, some five hundred years before, had overrun, not stopping short of the sack of the great Rome itself.

Notice carefully that Cæsar sometimes speaks of *Gallia* as merely one of the three divisions of "Gaul as a whole."

**Belgae, Aquitani, Celtæ:** These nations are represented to-day by the Welsh, Basques of northwestern Spain, and the Irish and Highland Scotch, respectively.

**The Belgæ:** The Belgian tribes commonly claimed German origin. Strabo calls them γερμανικούς έθνος, a "Germanic people." And Hir-tius, in the Eighth Book, says, "They are not much different from the Germans."

**The Celtæ:** These are the people whom the Romans meant especially when they spoke of Gauls. In Cæsar's time they had fallen from the position of headship of all France to a third part in the territorial division which he describes. They called themselves "Children of Night," whence the origin of our expression *fortnight* and *se'nnight* — in accordance with the Gallic manner of reckoning time by night. Modern scholars have learned a little of their language from proper names and inscriptions, which show them to be a branch of the Aryan race, which swept westward from Asia over Europe long before the time of Greece or Rome. For the English

meaning of some Celtic proper names, see the Vocabulary of this book.

**Mercatores**, or "Italian traders": Cæsar tells us that the Belgians were yet untouched by Roman civilization, they being too remote for the visits of the Italian traders, coming up from Marseilles along the natural highway of the Rhone, the Saône, and then the Loire. But upon the great and open central portion, the land of the Celts, was being dumped, from pack-horse, mule, or cart, every luxury of the Roman epicure—and with it all, slowly, the attendant vices. The most common article of traffic was the sparkling southern wines, for which, it is said, these people would barter their sons.

Thus Rome was waging a double-headed warfare of arms and debauchery. The one followed the ravages of the other, and already in Cæsar's day the former bold and hardy tribes of Gaul, that "once magnificent people, were in a state of change and decomposition."

In order that the pupil may understand better the environment of the people against whom Cæsar planned and executed his victorious campaigns, we quote here a few lines from *Froude*:

"The Gauls had yielded to contact with the Roman Province. They had built towns and villages. They had covered the land with farms and homesteads. They had made roads. They had bridged rivers, even such rivers as the Rhone and the Loire. They had amassed wealth, and had adopted habits of comparative luxury, which, if it had not abated their disposition to fight, had diminished their capacity for fighting.

"The chief was either hereditary or elected, or won his command by the sword. The mass of the people were serfs. The best fighters were self-made nobles, under the chief's authority. Every man in the tribe was the chief's absolute subject; the chief, in turn, was bound to protect the meanest of them against injury from without. War, on a large scale or a small, had been the occupation of their lives. When the call to arms went out, every man of the required age was expected at the muster, and the last comer was tortured to death in the presence of his comrades as a lesson against backwardness."

Thus we see a rude resemblance to feudalism.

**Oceano**: This means the Atlantic, and especially that part adjacent to France, now called the Bay of Biscay.

## CHAPTER II

**Orgetorix**: He first suggested his scheme in B.C. 61, three years before Cæsar's appearance in Gaul. This date is confirmed by a sentence in the next chapter. Note how the Romans expressed dates, viz., by designating the consuls of the particular year.

**loci natura**: "These bold, hardy mountaineers occupied modern Switzerland."

**provinciam nostram**: See Vocabulary.

**pro multitudine**: The population of Helvetia, as given by Cæsar in chapter 29, was only 263,000. As the same region now has a population of about three millions, the fact of over-crowded conditions must be disregarded in accounting for the migration. Rather is it attributable to the increasing encroachment of the Germans, and the report of broad, fertile fields far to the west along the shores of the Bay of Biscay between the Garonne and the Loire. Above all is the fact of their inherent unrest, as shown by the escapades of previous generations; their part in the Cimbri invasion, their alliances with the Teutons on lesser occasions, their campaigns of fire and sword down the Rhone. The disaster at Aix, forty years before, was now forgotten, and time was ripe for another outbreak. This is rather the natural explanation of their desire for new homes.

**in latitudinem**: The *Jahrbücher für classische Philologie* suggests that Cæsar wrote LXXX, and this was changed to CLXXX by mistake of some early copyist. The region in question measures 80 Roman miles in width, instead of 180, as given. The Roman mile, or "a thousand paces," is about .9 of the English mile, or 4,854 feet. The *passus* is 4 feet 10 $\frac{1}{4}$  inches.

## CHAPTER III

**regnum obtinuerat**: Catamantaloedis had formerly held the chieftaincy among his people. His son, Casticus, was induced to make an effort to secure the same position for himself. From this we infer that the chief authority was no longer hereditary, but elective or won by the sword or political chicane.

**principatum**: A close distinction is drawn by some authorities

between this word and *regnum*. The latter was distinctly political, necessarily involving official position and authority, a power conferred by the tribe. The *principatum* was the prerogative of one born to rank and wealth, being a position of prominence without constitutional or official power. This distinction seems to be confirmed by the case of Dumnorix. He already possessed the *principatum*, and was induced to try for the *regnum*, that is, the political sovereignty. (See notes to chapter 19, *principatum*.)

**regna**: The plural is used because the political sovereignty of three states is meant.

**tres populos**: Helvetii, *Æ*dui, Sequani.

#### CHAPTER IV

**Ea res**: The conspiracy.

**Ex vinculis**: "In chains."

**damnatum . . . oportebat**: Note that Cæsar omits *cum*, which is the implied object of *sequi*, the whole being the subject of the impersonal verb.

**igni**: Barbarous and inhuman practices seem to have been not uncommon among the Gauls. See the quotation from Froude, in Chapter I, last sentence. Human sacrifice was sometimes offered in religious ceremony. Fire was the common fate of traitors.

**suam familiam**: The meaning of this is now a mooted question. The derivation of this word, from *famulus*, "servant," seems to show plainly that it means a gang of servants or slaves, rendered by the one word "household." Cæsar's sentence is then properly constructed, for the clients and debtors are separate and additional members of the entire retinue of Orgetorix, and not to be considered a part of the *familia*. If not so, then his sentence is carelessly written. The latter fact is sometimes argued.

**clientes**: Retainers or devoted followers, whom oath and sacred custom compelled to follow their chief, like the vassal of the middle ages. Cæsar here uses a Latin word which to the Roman gave at once a clear idea of that relationship of lord and vassal which reached its fullness of growth in mediæval times; for it existed in Rome as well as Gaul under the name of client and patron. Thus Cæsar does not enter into explanation of the matter, for he knows his

people are already familiar with it at home. In a subsequent book, however, he again mentions this institution, and shows especial interest in a peculiar feature of it. In Book III, Chapter 22, Cæsar tells us that when Crassus was campaigning in the southwest and besieging an Aquitanian town, a certain leader of the enemy came rushing out from another less well-guarded part of the town, accompanied by six hundred devoted followers called *soldurii*. Cæsar's brief account of the condition of these retainers is valuable. He says they enjoy all the advantages of life with him to whose service they are sworn, and if misfortune befalls him, they suffer the same fate or commit suicide. Cæsar adds that never in human memory has a *soldurius* refused death after his master. This relationship was the natural, perhaps inevitable, growth of a time when might was right, and the rule that only of the strong. It is a mark of a higher civilization than that of the past, that we have been able to devise a better social order than that of vassalage.

**se eripuit**: Exactly how he effected this is not explained. Some commentators say that the large retinue of the accused man awed the court to silence.

**multitudinem cogerent**: See again the extract from Froude, in regard to the mustering of men (Notes, Chapter I).

**ut arbitrantur**: Notice that *ut* is often used with the indicative in the sense of "as."

## CHAPTER V

**quod constituerant**: This means the emigration. At first the older men had opposed the project, but they had at last been overruled by the less cautious and less experienced younger element. Thus, prudence and wisdom of age gave way to the indiscretion and enthusiasm of youth, and again to the unfortunate people was to come a repetition of the reverses of Aix, forty years before.

**oppidum vs. vicus**: The distinction of meaning of these words is not more a question of size than of fortifications. About the former was always a wall. The latter was a group of houses in the open country. The existence of towns, villages, buildings, and farms, herein mentioned, shows the Gauls to have advanced far beyond the primal state of human life.

**reliqua aedificia:** This means all buildings not already burned; that is, all structures on the outlying farms, beyond town or village limits.

**trium mensium:** This would seem to show how long a time it might take them to reach their new home. Let the pupil pause to contemplate what a vast amount of food would be required for 368,000 people for three months! It has been variously estimated that it took six to twelve thousand wagons and about twenty-five thousand draught animals, extending along a line of thirty to fifty miles, to transport this food.

**Rauraci, Tulingi, Latobrigi:** It will be profitable for the pupil to take a good map of modern Europe and locate the regions occupied by these early people. The Rauraci were near Basle; the Tulingi, near Schaffhausen; the Latobrigi, in the Black Forest (Schwarzwald). Notice the repetition of the conjunction *et*; this is called *polysyndeton*.

**Boii:** These were properly a Gallic tribe, although at this time rather widely scattered and homeless, many being in Germany, just across the Rhine. Schweizer-Sidler is authority for the statement that the Gauls in Germany were a remnant left behind in the great Aryan migration from east to west.

**Noreia:** Modern site of Neumarkt, about one hundred miles southwest of Vienna.

## CHAPTER VI

**itinera:** "There were only two ways by which they could leave home." If the pupil will examine a good modern map, he will see how effectually the ways to the south and west were blocked. Nature has raised an almost unbroken barrier about that little country. Along the south and southwest tower the highest ridges and peaks of the whole Alps, including the famous Rosa, St. Gothard, Great St. Bernard, Finster Aarhorn, Jungfrau, and the highest of all—Mt. Blanc. To the west stood the then impassable Jura range. Whether the comparatively open route down the Rhine, along the base of the Vosges, was considered or not we are not informed. One may infer that it was rejected, because of its long and tedious circuit through a country particularly hostile.

Thus, nature conspired with man and matter to force a conflict between Gaul and Roman. So down the lake to Geneva they were to go. At that point a choice of way opened: they might cross the bridge at Geneva into the country of the Allobroges, who, although under Roman dominion, were not loyal to the master. Their way would then be through country easy to traverse; or, they might continue down the river along its northern bank and emerge into an open country, through the narrow defile where the river bends around the southern limb of the Jura. This way was at last forced upon them. This defile or pass is now called the *Pas de l'Ecluse*, and is situated on the line of railway from Paris to Geneva, via Mâcon, about an hour's ride out of Geneva. An idea of the wildness of this region may be gained from the fact that a tunnel of two and one-half miles has been constructed to avoid one of the most difficult parts.

**per provinciam nostram:** This really means the land of the Allobroges, south and southeast of Geneva, being now called Dauphiné and Savoie.

The region had been subjugated in B. C. 121. It had revolted and was again pacified by Pomptinus in B. C. 61, and made a part of the Roman Province, the proconsular authority thus being extended quite to Geneva.

**Vado transitur:** Cæsar says there were fords at some places. Now there is only one, and that is only a few miles down from Geneva. The river is very swift, and thus probably its current has worn away the bed. From Lyons to almost the mouth, the current is so strong that only the largest steamers can navigate it.

**Genava:** This is a Celtic word, *gena*, meaning mouth, since at this point the Rhone gorges the waters of the lake into its narrow bed.

**pons:** This is mentioned, since the Helvetii planned to cross it into the land of the Allobroges. Hence, Cæsar's first act was to destroy it (see chapter VII).

**a. d. V. Kal. Apr. : ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles**, "the fifth day before the Kalends of April," nominally March 28. This is a peculiar construction. It is an instance of case by attraction, corresponding to mode by attraction, explained in Rule 94. *Kalendas* is the object of *ante*. *Diem* is said to be drawn away from the usual

ablative of *time when* by its proximity to *ante*. *Apriles* is an adjective, modifying *Kalendas*.

### CHAPTER VII

**Caesari:** Notice that this is the first mention of Cæsar. It is peculiar that he, the writer, speaks of himself, the actor, always in the third person, as though he were writing of another.

Let the pupil now consider how Cæsar had come to be so concerned in Gallic affairs that word was brought directly to him. It was the custom to grant to the consuls, at the close of their term of office, the governorship of some province, for one year, with the title of proconsul. Cæsar had just finished his year as consul (B. C. 59). He was the ablest Roman living, not excepting the great Pompey, who had achieved undying fame in his swift victory over the pirates of the Mediterranean and over Mithridates, the scourge of the East. Now, again, good service would be rendered Rome if she were relieved of fear of Gaul and German, who were hovering "like an ominous cloud charged with forces of uncertain magnitude," the partial strength and fury of which Italy had already more than once seen in action.

Now again was the need of an able man. The Senate, as usual, was lethargic. The people, however, were spurred by personal anxiety and fear to something of the old fire. It was they who had urged the matter of Pompey's mission, mentioned above, and now again they were to make no mistake in their choice of a man to care for their interests on the northern frontier. They played their hand with a vengeance, and instead of the usual one year, they determined to send Cæsar as proconsul or governor of Gaul for five years. The choice of Cæsar may be largely attributed to his popularity. He was the idol of the people, who seem to have come to feel that with him naught was impossible, in him "was the divine majesty of gods, who are the masters of kings." It was a case of prejudiced choice; for, as Froude says, "No Roman general was ever sent upon an enterprise so fraught with complicated possibilities, and few with less experience of the realities of war."

Thus to Cæsar, as the newly appointed governor of Gaul, was

brought word of a condition of affairs requiring his immediate presence.

**Maturat ab urbe:** When *urbs* is alone, that is, without its appositive of the particular city, it means Rome.

**Max. pot. itineribus:** He travelled sometimes a hundred miles a day, either walking at the head of his legions, or mounted on his own favorite horse, which would suffer no one but his master to mount him, or borne in his litter while dictating to four or sometimes seven amanuenses — reading, writing, dictating, and listening all at once. “Under the rains of Gaul, swimming its rivers, climbing its mountains on foot, and making his bed among rains and snows in its forests and morasses,” of which Michelet, Suetonius, and Plutarch all tell us, he spared himself none of the hardships of the common soldier.

**Provinciae . . . legio una:** Cæsar went by way of Marseilles, where he probably had left a legion on his return to Rome from Spain, one year before. This was the legion which was to become the famous “tenth.” Then, after levying other troops, he hurried on, reaching the vicinity of Geneva in eight days (Plutarch).

**L. Cassium:** This is an incident of the attempted invasion of Italy by the Cimbri and Teutones, Germanic tribes, with Gallic allies, in 107 B. C. The army of L. Cassius Longinus was one of five or six to be defeated by the barbarians during those fearful years from 113-105 B. C. Only in 102 B. C., by Marius at Aquae Sextiae (Aix), near Marseilles, and in 101 B. C. at Vercellæ, in Italy, were these disasters fully avenged. “The homeless people of the Cimbri and their comrades were no more” (Mommsen).

**ab Helvetiis pulsum:** After the Cimbri had defeated the Roman consul, Papirius Carbo, in Noricum, B. C. 113, they turned westward and instigated the Helvetii to similar action.

**sub iugum:** “under the yoke.” This ceremony was the usual token of surrender. Livy, the greatest contemporary Roman historian, the personal friend of the Cæsars, the Gibbon-Macaulay of his day, describes the construction of the yoke as follows: “Tribus hastis iugum fit; humi fixis duabus, superque eas transversa una deligata.” Under this the defeated army marched. Note our word *subjugate*.

## CHAPTER VIII

*interea*: "in the meantime," i.e., from the time the Helvetian agents left him, April 1, until the designated time of their return, April 13.

*murum fossamque perducit*: Thus entrance into the Province was prevented, but the way to the west still lay open through the Pas de l'Ecluse. Cæsar's force was small. He must replenish it. Leaving Labienus to guard the newly constructed line of defenses along the south bank of the Rhone, he set out for Italy. But before he could return, with his five new legions, the enemy had accomplished their exodus through the Sequani, and were plundering and ravaging the land of the *Aedui*, as given in chapters 9, 10 and 11 following.

As to the wall and moat which were constructed from Geneva to the pass of the Jura, a distance of about eighteen miles by the river, but only half that in a straight line, the labor of construction does not seem wonderful when we are told that recent surveys show that the total extent of space requiring fortification was only about three miles. The work was probably done in as many days. The reason for this short distance is that the south bank of the river is very rugged, being quite precipitous in most places. Thus only at exposed places, where the bank was sloping, were defenses necessary to prevent the enemy from fording and scaling the opposite shore. A clear idea of the appearance of these walls and ditches will be gained by a study of the cut on page 44.

*praesidia, castella*: The former were forces, occupying the latter. The *castella* were little forts, built at the more open and accessible points along the river. The engineers who surveyed the ground by direction of Napoleon III, already mentioned in these Notes, found traces of these structures. About four redoubts, or *castella*, were located. It would be ill advised to associate these fortresses with the fords, since the Helvetii were in possession of boats and rafts, which made them independent of shallows. Knowing this, the Romans certainly took no notice of fords in locating their *castella*. Hence the statement that in those days there were more fords than at present does not follow from this fact of the *castella*.

## CHAPTER IX

**Sequanis invitisi:** However willing the Sequani might be to see the Helvetii in their neighbors' territories, they objected to the presence, in their own, of such a flight of devouring locusts. Evidently, however, there was *some general scheme*, of which the entry of the Helvetii into Gaul was an essential part; thus, the Sequani were induced to agree (Froude).

To see what this general scheme was will help the pupil to comprehend the political situation in Gaul at this time. The *Ædui* seem to have inherited the Celtic leadership of old, and the Romans, in their desire to extend their power over Gaul, had taken them under their protection. But this subtle influence was resisted, not only by tribes quite as strong as the *Ædui*, but even by parties within tribes nominally favorable to Rome, even within the *Ædui* themselves. The national spirit was not dead in Gaul. Everywhere the patriots, proud of their independence, rankling against the fetters Rome was slowly forging for them, were at work marshalling their strength within and without their country, soliciting assistance from whatever source, even from the Germans. As Cæsar tells us in Book VI, chapters 11 and 12, in every district, in every hamlet, were these two factions, one in sympathy with Rome, the other bitterly averse to all foreign interference, each seeking external assistance, looking for friends beyond the confines of their own country. The prowess of the Helvetii, and especially their experience in warfare with both Roman and German, made them especially welcome to the national or patriotic party. Their presence would be a most desirable acquisition in a struggle for maintenance of Gallic independence. Thus, since the party of the patriots was now everywhere ascendant, the entry of this hardy people was easily effected, being *an important part of the general scheme* to resist the encroachment of the Romans.

**Dumnorigem Aeduum:** In Book VI, chapter 12, Cæsar says the leaders of the two factions were the *Ædui*, for Rome; the *Sequani*, for the people. This is but a broad statement of the situation; for, as he himself says again, as stated above, in every district, in every hamlet, and even in families, there was the same factional strife. Dumnorix was the ardent leader of the national faction

among the *Ædui*. Thus he favored the coming of the Helvetii. With the success of the patriots, he hoped for the *regnum* (see *Notes* to chapter 3), not of the Sequani alone, but perhaps of Gaul.

**obsides dant**: This fact shows the utter decomposition and alienation of the Gallic people as well as their extreme barbarism, since this guaranty of a peaceful passage was deemed necessary. This proved to be a wise foresight of the Sequani, when the passing throng reached the land beyond. (See chapter 11.)

#### CHAPTER X

Quiet at last followed the repeated but vain attempts of the Helvetii to scale the south bank of the Rhone, and enter the possessions of the Allobroges, as described in chapter 8. To know the cause of the lull and what was transpiring in the Helvetian quarters, Cæsar sent scouts, who brought back word (*Caesari renuntiatur*) of the intended movements of the enemy.

In this chapter Cæsar states fully why he was so opposed to the emigration of the Helvetii. Some writers are inclined to discredit him, and feel that his reasons were but pretexts for interference, disguising his real purpose of extending Roman sovereignty over Gaul.

Judging Rome by her previous history and even by events then going on in other parts of her frontier, this may be true. Yet the force of Cæsar's argument, that it would be dangerous to have such a hostile and warlike people as the Helvetii as neighbors to the Romanized tribes of the western part of the province, separated not by impassable mountains, but by reaches of open and level plains, must be credited. Furthermore, there was no surety that the emigrants would abide in their new home. Cæsar's keen mind foresaw that the whole movement was but the prelude of the play, and sooner or later the whole region would rise and move as one great tide over the borders of the empire. The beginning must be stopped once for all. Some commentators have argued the emptiness of Cæsar's excuse of opposition to the Helvetii, and have said that, instead of being nearer to the Roman dominions, the emigrants in question would be still further away. In respect to miles, as the crow flies, this claim is true, virtually it is absurd. As Cicero once

said, the gods placed the Alps to shelter Rome in her weakness. Helvetia lay beyond that barrier, while on the far west, from the northern bank of the mouth of the Garonne, whither the emigrants were making, to the borders of the Province, was a stretch of only a hundred miles of open country. To cross this would be, for any warring party of horse, but the casting of a pebble.

Another conclusive reason for resisting the emigration itself is found to have been in Cæsar's mind, by the fact that after the defeat of the enemy at Bibracte, near Autun (chapter 26), he ordered the remnant of the people to return to Helvetia; for he knew, if it were left vacant, hordes of Germans would fill it, and from there out again they would follow in the wake of the Helvetii, and thus Rome would soon have to do with a still fiercer and still more dreaded foe.

**in Italiam**: Nominally, Italy extended north only to the Rubicon river. Cæsar went only to Aquileia, near the head of the Adriatic, now Aquila, an inconsiderable city, long since outgrown by Venice. At that time Aquileia was the chief recruiting station for the north-west, and very strongly fortified.

**magnis itineribus**: From 20 to 25 miles per day.

**proximum iter**: He returned from Aquileia by way of Turin, where he levied the *duas legiones* mentioned, and thence on to the pass of Mont Genèvre, just south of the famous Mt. Cenis tunnel of to-day, and near the modern Briançon. Here he was attacked by mountaineers, whom he speedily repulsed.

**quinque legiones**: There was already one legion on the Rhone with Labienus. This made six legions, or about 25,000 men, now under Cæsar's command, besides some native recruits of Gallic cavalry.

**Ocelum**: The modern site of this town is not known. Certainly, it was very near, if not quite, where Briançon now stands. Some suggest, rather, the city of Grenoble, pop. 65,000, situated at the confluence of the Isère and the Drac, in the magnificent plain of Graisivaudan, surrounded by imposing mountains.

**Segusiavi**: These were clients of the Ædui, hence mainly favorable to Rome. They were situated around modern Lyons. Cæsar crossed the Rhone above Lyons, keeping a northwesterly route toward the Saône, thus aiming to reach the rear of the advancing host.

In tracing his route at this point, there is a little uncertainty. If he crossed the Rhone below Lyons, into the main country of the Segusiavi, as is to be inferred from his last statements in this chapter, then it were necessary that he recross the Rhone or pass over the Saône above Lyons, in order to get into the rear of the enemy, who were crossing the latter river on their way westward, as described in chapter 12. But Cæsar makes no mention of such a detour. Thus it is generally interpreted that the Segusiavi reached across the river at Vienne, and occupied more or less of the region on the east side northward from that point. Thus, as stated, it is generally understood that he kept on in a northwesterly route, across this arm of the Segusiavian country, crossing the Rhone above Lyons, where it turns to the east.

#### CHAPTER XI

**iam** : "By this time." Napoleon III estimated that Cæsar was absent on his recruiting expedition around Aquileia about 40 days. During this time, the Helvetii had marched but about 100 miles, that is, from Geneva, via the pass of the Jura, to Mâcon on the Saône. But it is also estimated that the line of march was 50 miles long. Hence at the time of Cæsar's return, the van of the enemy was well into the *Æduan* country beyond the river, at least to Chalons. In the next chapter, he says three-fourths were already beyond the river.

**The *Ædui***: Why these people were especially despoiled, and with what confidence they could send appeals to Cæsar, as here related, the pupil will readily understand from what has already been given in these notes.

**The *Ambarri* and *Allobroges***: Cæsar speaks of them in terms showing that they had been utterly ravaged, since through this region the whole multitude had passed. The *Ædui* were yet to feel the full and complete effect of the onslaught. They were crying out more in fear of the coming storm.

#### CHAPTER XII

**de *tertia vigilia***: From midnight to 3 A.M. (see Vocabulary).

**Tigurini**: These were one of the Gallic tribes or districts, whom

the Cimbri persuaded to join in the invasion of Italy. They assisted in the defeat of the consular army of Junius Silanus in 109 B.C. and of that of Cassius in 107 B.C. Hence Cæsar's exultation that fate had reserved for him the vengeance.

This thought turns us to the question of Cæsar's religious creed. Froude says in his admirable chapter on Cæsar, the man: "He found no reason for supposing that there was a life beyond the grave. He respected the religion of the Roman State as an institution established by the laws. His own writings contain nothing to indicate (prove?) that he himself had any religious belief at all." Another writer has said: "A disbeliever in the superstitions of his day, he yet seems to acknowledge the presence of a controlling power."

### CHAPTER XIII

**pontem in Arare:** This was, of course, a bridge of boats, called a "pontoon," probably constructed of the vessels which were bringing food up the river, as stated in chapter 16.

**diebus viginti:** This shows us how long the Helvetii were crossing the river.

**Divicō:** As Cæsar says, he had been a leader of the Helvetii in the Cimbri invasion, when Cassius was defeated, 107 B.C. The year was now 58 B.C., making the event 49 years before. Thus was Divicō an old man, and probably the oldest among them in military experience. This was probably the reason why he was chosen envoy on this occasion.

In the choice of this man, who must have awakened in any patriotic Roman the most bitter and revengeful thoughts, some writers have questioned both the wisdom and the motive of the Helvetians. If they hoped or cared for amnesty, it was certainly unwise if not indequate to offer overtures through a man so identified with the offences of the past. Rather is the question of motive probable. We can understand how Cæsar's sudden appearance with an army of six legions, or 25,000 disciplined men, whereas when last seen he had only one, momentarily startled the enemy into this conference, but still, mingling with and overtopping their anxiety, were a certain disregard and contempt of a foe so inferior in numbers. It were

well, they thought, to remind the Roman leader in their rear, that the Helvetii had done something in the past and were not to be despised in the present.

The truth of the above analysis seems to be confirmed by two or three facts: In the conference, they themselves dictated terms of settlement, and when these were displaced by Cæsar's own, they broke off the negotiations and continued on their way, as though nothing had happened. Again, when Cæsar temporarily changed his tactics, as mentioned in chapter 23, the enemy readily construed it as due to fear.

Hence we see that Divico may have been purposely selected to offend and taunt the Romans, possibly even to frighten them from further pursuit. Unfortunately for them, Cæsar was their Nemesis.

#### CHAPTER XIV

**Cæsar's reply:** Let the pupils take advantage of this opportunity to study Cæsar as an orator. It is advised that the student write this speech to Divico in the most eloquent and forcible English that he can command.

Cæsar was not merely a great general. As Chateaubriand once declared, he is the most complete man of all history; his genius was transcendent in three respects — in statecraft, in war, and in literature and eloquence.

Plutarch says that he had happy talents from nature for a public speaker, and as he did not lack ambition to cultivate them, he was undoubtedly the second orator in Rome. But he never rose to that pitch of eloquence to which his powers might have carried him, being rather engaged in those wars and political intrigues which at last gained him the empire.

The eloquence he showed at Rome, in his earlier career, in the prosecution of certain cases of impeachment, won him a considerable interest, and his engaging address and conversation gained the hearts of his people.

Cæsar supplemented his native oratorical talent by a course of training at Rhodes, under the most skillful teacher of rhetoric and oratory of his time, Apollonius Molon.

Cicero, who often heard him, said that there was a pregnancy in his sentences and a dignity in his manner which no orator in Rome could approach. He surpassed those who had practiced no other art.

Quintilian says that he spoke with the same spirit with which he fought, and by application would have equalled Cicero.

**Cæsar as a writer:** While this thought of Cæsar as an orator is in our minds, it may be well to add a few words to complete the general topic of Cæsar as a man of letters. Only a small part of his writings is extant, their loss being perhaps assignable to the bigotry of the time succeeding Augustus, when the law of *majestas* was revived and extended to include defamatory writing, and there may have been much in Cæsar's works offensive to a narrow imperialism like that of Tiberius. Among these lost works may be mentioned the *Anti-Cato*, written in reply to the eulogy which Cicero published on the death of that zealous and conservative censor. There is much to be admired in Cato's honor and integrity and stern insistence upon the preservation of the old time virtue. He is the Cato of whom *Portia* boasts of being fathered. He sided with Pompey in the Civil War, and hence was an enemy to Cæsar. It is to be greatly regretted that Cæsar's reply is lost.

Besides this, he wrote treatises on philosophy, language, natural science, and augury. Nor did he disdain verse. He wrote a Latin grammar to amuse himself as he led an army over the Alps. He even wrote a book on the motion of the stars.

His surviving works are seven Books of the Gallic War, and three on the Civil War, and a few fragments on other subjects.

His style is a recognized model of unadorned narration, pure, graceful, easy. Even in his story of the Civil War, of which he was by far the largest part, there is not the slightest trace of strutting or boasting, no straining for effect, no malice, bitterness, or invective, naught but the simple yet eloquent story, told with his usual strong but subdued emotion.

Of this trait Cicero speaks in his masterly way: ". . . Nudi omni ornatu orationis, tanquam veste detracta — "bare of all adornment, like an undraped human form."

We are reminded of Scott's headlong speed, when Hirtius tells us,

in speaking of the Gallic Commentaries, "While others know how faultlessly they are written, I know with what ease and rapidity he dashed them off."

## CHAPTER XV

**castra movent:** "They break camp."

**The Roman Camp:** This was the solace of the Roman soldier, an ever present help in time of trouble. To-day, in the reverses of battle, an army is exposed to all the dangers of a disorderly retreat, only to be more widely and hopelessly scattered, as it withdraws; in the days of Rome, however, the army frequently retired before its advancing foe into the shelter of its camp, — *solis occasu suas copias in castra reduxit*, — being one of the stereotype phrases, soon familiar to every reader.

To enable the student to understand the many references in Cæsar to the Roman camp, the following brief account is given: —

A Roman army never halted for the night without entrenching itself. As the day's march approached its close, being usually about noon, the army having marched from about four or five A.M., a detachment of centurions, scouts, and surveyors was sent ahead to select a spot for encampment, and stake out the camp. In Book II, chapter 17, we read: *exploratores centurionesque praemittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant.*

Thus, the outlines of the camp having been already marked out with great accuracy, no time was lost after the arrival of the army; laying aside all instruments of war, the soldiers began to dig a ditch or moat (*fossa*), about nine feet wide and six feet deep. With this earth they built also a wall (*vallum*), usually about six feet above the level of the ground, and six or eight feet broad on the top, to enable standing-room for the soldiers in event of an assault on the camp. To strengthen the defenses, branches of trees, stakes, and even logs were imbedded and the sides covered with sods, and along the outer edge of the top was a line of green stakes driven into the ground, and the branches intertwined, rising four or five feet above the top, and forming a breastwork. For a cross-section view of this complete structure, see cut on page 44.

A favorite site for a camp was the slope of a hill (*sub colle, sub*

*monte*), with wood, water, and grass in abundance near by. In Book II, chapter 18, Cæsar describes the natural features of the location of a certain camp.

In form, the camp was either square or rectangular, as nearly as the situation would allow. Let the pupil draw the plan from the following description. See also the camp-plan in any book of antiquities.

On each side was a gateway. From the *porta praetoria*, facing the enemy, to the rear gate, *porta decumana*, ran a road or "street," fifty feet wide. Likewise, the gates on the right and left were joined by a still wider road, called the *via principalis*, thus dividing the camp into two unequal parts. The larger part was assigned to the legionaries, and was itself cut by the *via quintana*. The smaller part was chiefly the headquarters of the general and his staff (*legati*, *quaestores*, and *tribuni*). Between the rampart or wall (*vallum*) and the tents was a space, 200 feet wide, reaching around the camp. This was to prevent the enemy from firing the tents, and also to give room for deploying the troops.

Great precautions were taken day or night to guard against surprise. One or two cohorts were *in statione* before each gate, and a squadron (*turma*) of horse patrolled the camp. Another cohort guarded the quarters of the general and quaestor. At night, the guard was divided into four reliefs to correspond with the divisions of the night (*vigiliae*). The three reliefs not on duty slept on their arms, ready for action.

**The Cavalry:** Cæsar here mentions for the first time the cavalry. It is said he had no horsemen when he came into Gaul, but he commenced at once and raised a force of about 4000, as stated, from the Province and especially from the *Ædui* and their client tribes. Others say that there was always a regular contingent of cavalry in every legion, mercenary troops from Spain and Germany, as well as from Gaul. These contingent forces of cavalry, however, are rarely mentioned, Cæsar's pride being in his own Roman legionaries. Whatever the fact may be concerning the existence at Cæsar's time of a regular cavalry, it is certain that temporary levies were made from Gallic states subject or favorable to Rome. These probably disbanded on the approach of winter, appearing again in the spring.

Thus, the cavalry is to be regarded as of two kinds: one forming

a regular part of the legion, hence often called *legionarii equites*, the other being a distinct body, and usually retaining its native dress and equipment and manner of fighting. Both were completely foreign.

The cavalry was divided into regiments (*alae*) of about 300 men each; these again divided into ten squadrons (*turmae*) of thirty men; and these again into three decurries (*decuriae*) of ten men each, in charge of decurions (chapter 23). The chief officer of an *ala* was called *praefectus equitum*, being usually a Roman, sometimes a native, as in chapter 18, where Dumnorix is mentioned as being in command of the Æduan cavalry.

Cæsar placed little dependence upon his cavalry, using them rather for scouting purposes, and to harass an enemy's line of march. In actual conflict they proved unstable, as shown in chapters 15 and 24. Their presence, too, gave a show of numbers.

**de nostris**: This is pointed out as being the beginning of those changes, chiefly declensional, which have produced the modern Romance tongues of Italy, France, and Spain.

**suos a proelio continebat**: They were now moving down along the west bank of the Saône, toward Chalons. The region here is very broken, and so did not give Cæsar the wished for opportunity to fight. This may account for his delay to attack.

## CHAPTER XVI

**propter frigora**: "On account of the frosts."

It was now at least the middle of June, and the region was south of the central part of France. This leads us to believe that the climate of sunny France has changed since Cæsar's day. This change may have come from cutting down the extensive forests, and draining the marshes, which Cæsar often mentions.

**frumenta**: In the plural, this means "standing grain."

**pabuli**: green fodder. Why was there not much for Cæsar?

**ab Arare**: The Helvetii had left the river, making westerly into the valley of the Loire.

**frumentum militibus metiri**: The regular food was coarse flour, or unground wheat or barley, which the soldier himself must grind. Every fifteen days he received two *modii*, or pecks. Each day he

ground about two pounds and boiled it into a thick paste, or made a kind of unleavened bread. Any other food or delicacy had to be obtained by foraging, or bought of the merchants (*mercatores*), who always followed the army in large numbers.

**vergobretus**: The real title in the Celtic language was *guerg breth*, "executor of judgment." Cæsar latinizes the word into *vergobretus*.

**(Aeduorum) precibus abductus**: In chapter 11, Cæsar told us that the *Ædui* sent envoys to ask aid of him against the *Helvetii*.

### CHAPTER XVII

**esse nonnullos**: Review the *Notes* of chapter 3.

The *principes* were not necessarily the same men as the *magistratus*.

**praestare . . . erupturi**: These were the favorite arguments of the national party. (See *Notes* to chapter 9.)

"Among the *Ædui*, too, there were fiery spirits who cherished the old traditions, and saw in the Roman alliance a prelude to annexation."

**tacuisse**: This shows how strong the anti-Roman feeling had become, even among the people hitherto most loyal to Rome.

### CHAPTER XVIII

**Dumnorix**: Read again the text of chapters 3 and 9.

What was the conspiracy of Orgetorix?

**dimittit, retinet**: The omission of the conjunction is called *asyndeton*. What is *polysyndeton*? (See *Notes* of chapter 5.)

**rerum novarum**: Usual expression for a political revolution. The frequency of such uprisings and changes among semi-barbarian people may be easily understood. The world has not yet outgrown them. Recent South American history is replete with fit examples. Likewise, in the late overthrow of the Obrenovitch dynasty in Servia, consummated by the murder of the king and queen and their adherents, and the immediate establishment of a liberal constitutional government, the student finds a striking similarity to the violent *coup d'états* of old.

*Farming the revenues*

**portoria**: These were duties or customs collected on imports and exports on the frontier, and on goods passing through the country, whether by land or water. Sometimes these tolls were levied by blackmail, i.e. by force, threats, or intimidation. The *Ædui* were especially well situated for the collection of large revenues, since by bridge tolls they controlled a considerable part of the *Saône*, which was the main water route into central Gaul from Marseilles.

After the Roman fashion, these revenues were "farmed out," that is, the privilege of collecting them was sold at auction. The buyer then made all collections, and kept for himself as profit all money remaining over the price which he bid and paid to the State. Often the successful bidder would sublet certain districts to various individuals, these underlings being the "publicans" mentioned in the New Testament.

**ex Helvetiis uxorem**: Who was the wife of Dumnorix? (See chapter 3.)

**sororem ex matre**: "A half sister, on his mother's side."

**Divitiacus**: He had long been a personal friend of Cæsar. He had been in Rome several times before Cæsar came to Gaul. It was he who went in person to notify the Roman Senate of the inroads of the Germans in b.c. 63, and again of the proposed exodus of the Helvetii. Hence the deference and affection which Cæsar shows him in chapter 19.

**si quid accidat Romanis**: This softened expression of a harsh thought is called *euphemism*. Translate: "in case of any disaster to the Romans."

**proelium equestre adversum**: The unsuccessful cavalry skirmish, mentioned in chapter 15, is thus explained as due to the treachery of Dumnorix. Review topic *Cavalry* in *Notes* to chapter 15.

## CHAPTER XIX

**iniusso suo et civitatis**: *suo* refers to Cæsar; *civitatis* means the *Ædui*.

**inscientibus ipsis**: *ipsis* refers to both Cæsar and the *Ædui*.

**a magistratu *Aeduorum***: To whom does this refer? What was

his official title, in both Celtic and Latin? What was his authority? (See *Notes* and text of chapter 15.)

**animadverto**: What is the literal meaning of this word? What is its inferred meaning? What is such studied toning of harsh thought called?

**Studium . . . temperantium**: Notice the omission of conjunctions. What is this frequent omission in Cæsar called?

**eius**: i.e. of Dumnorix.

**interpretibus**: Why were interpreters necessary in the Roman army in Gaul?

Did Divitiacus understand Latin?

**Procillus**: This man was a cultured Gaul, an intimate friend and important character in Cæsar's chronicle. In Book I, chapter 47, Cæsar speaks highly of his birth, character, and linguistic attainments.

**principem**: One enjoying a *principatum*, i.e., "a leading and influential man." (See *Notes* to chapter 3.)

**ipso** and **eius**: These both refer to Divitiacus. In chapter 16, the student will remember that Divitiacus is mentioned as being summoned to the meeting.

**eo**: To whom does this refer?

**causa cognita**: Let the student be always careful in the translation of the ablative absolute. Never render it literally. Never sacrifice one's own tongue to any foreign idiom. Render this: "after trying the case."

## CHAPTER XX

Find an example of euphemism in this chapter. Let the pupil compare carefully the direct and the indirect discourse of the speech of Divitiacus, and be prepared to convert the one into the other at dictation in class.

**ipse, se, suam, sese**: All these refer to Divitiacus, the speaker.

**ille**: This refers to the one remote, i.e. to the one spoken of, Dumnorix.

**condonare**: What is the literal meaning of this word? The literal meaning accounts for its double object.

**Dumnorix**: What was his fate? (See Vocabulary.) Give in review an account of him, as given by Cæsar.

## CHAPTER XXI

### *Officers of a Roman army*

1. **Dux bellī**: Before entering upon the duties of his new office, the commander in chief took the vows in the Capitol, and assumed the *paludamentum*, or cloak of scarlet wool, gold-embroidered, as token of his *imperium militare*. His title was *dux bellī*, but after his first victory he received, from his soldiers, the courteous appellation of *imperator*.

Usually he was narrowly restricted by the Senate, subject to its whims, but Cæsar in Gaul was autocratic. He could increase his forces at will, and make war or peace without consulting the Senate.

2. **Legati**: These were lieutenant-generals of the *dux bellī*, appointed by the Senate, and usually three in number. Cæsar had ten in Gaul. They were entirely subject to their commander, having been chosen on his nomination. Cæsar usually placed them in command of a legion each, and in his absence he conferred upon them the *imperium*, the lieutenant then being called *legatus pro praetore*.

3. **Quaestor**: The *quaestor*, or quartermaster, was elected by the people annually to accompany the army and attend to the financial affairs. He took charge of the military treasure-chest, and supervised the supplies and equipment of the soldiers. He also rated and disposed of the booty.

Each *dux bellī* had a *quaestor*.

4. **Tribuni militum**: Until displaced by the *legati*, these, six to each legion, held rank next to the commander. In earlier times they led the legion in turn, but in Cæsar's army we find them outranked by the *legati*, and reduced to subordinate services. This was a most beneficent reform, for these *tribuni* were of the equestrian rank, or order of knights, and had been appointed through family influence, and not because of military skill. This change awakened no animosity on the part of these deposed favorites of fortune, for Cæsar used his customary tact, and to them were given functions more genteel; for, instead of leading rough men to the fray, they hereafter were to sit in councils of war and preside at courts-martial.

**5. Centuriones:** These were the real leaders of the soldiers. Their position was like that of captain, sergeant, and corporal combined. They were of humble birth, and promoted solely because of fighting qualities. They were the pride and envy of the common soldier; their office, the goal of his ambition.

**6.** Below the centurions and above the common soldier, or "private," were privileged classes; as veterans, reënlisted men, orderlies, standard bearers, musicians, etc.

**exploratoribus:** Soldiers, sent out for scouting purposes, were called *speculatores*, if alone; if in parties, *exploratores*.

**sub monte:** This was Mt. Tauffrin, in the Cote d'or ridge.

**vigilia:** About what hour was it? (See Vocabulary.)

**pro-prætore:** The governor of a province was usually called *praetor* or *pro-prætor*. He was supreme in military and civil authority. In case of a critical state of war in any province, a consul was sent as governor of the province, with the title *pro-consul*. Such in name was Cæsar in Gaul. But he was practically *praetor* of Gaul, i.e. governor of Gaul. In as much as the *praetor* was supreme in military affairs, the word *praetor* means "commanding general," as well as governor. Cæsar uses the word in this sense in the text. Labienus was sent on this mission, like an envoy plenipotentiary, with full authority of a commanding general.

**quid sui consilii sit:** His plan may be inferred from the errand of the scouts. What was this errand? Cæsar planned a flank movement, that is, to pass around to the rear, and occupy the heights above the enemy, who lay encamped at the base.

**equitatum:** What does Cæsar do with his cavalry in this instance? Understand that this was their usual position in the line of march. Describe the source, use, and organization of the cavalry. (See *Notes* to chapter 15.)

**de quarta vigilia:** The fourth watch had begun when Cæsar commenced his march. As the night watch began at sunset and continued until sunrise, and as the night was divided into four watches, the student must know the season of year to determine the exact hours of any given watch. Estimating the number of night hours, and dividing by four, we obtain the length of a watch, from which the time of any watch is easily determined. For exam-

ple: It was about the first of July, the sun setting at 7.29 and rising at 4.38. If Cæsar started about the beginning of the fourth watch, what was the approximate hour of the night? (Answer: About 2 A. M.) Using the almanac, let the teacher give like examples.

The fact that it lacked yet about two and one-half hours of dawn explains how Cæsar could hope to gain his vantage-ground unseen. It also helps to excuse the blunder of Considius mentioned in the next chapter.

**Considius:** What had been his military experience? Answer: He had been in active service under two of the most successful generals, in several of the greatest wars waged by Rome, the Mithridatic and the Servile.

#### CHAPTER XXII

**prima luce:** At what hour?

**mons:** What mountain?

**ipse:** Cæsar. How far had he marched since two o'clock?

**captivis:** What officer had charge of booty?

**A Gallicis armis:** "from," an unusual meaning, since it contains the idea of *means*, which does not admit the preposition.

What was Cæsar's probable inference, from the report of his scouts, as to Labienus?

**Labienus:** Was he really, or only nominally, *praetor*, as he stood there on the summit at dawn, watching in vain for Cæsar? Why?

**intervallo:** At what distance did Cæsar follow the enemy? (See chapter 15.)

#### CHAPTER XXIII

**frumentum:** Describe the food of the Roman soldier as to kind, quantity, mode of preparation, and apportionment. What officer disbursed supplies? How might the soldier obtain delicacies? (See *Notes* to chapter 16.)

**Bibracte:** Now identified with Mont Beuvray, a considerable elevation of about 3,000 feet, in the highlands of Nivernais, about ten miles west of Autun. Scholars formerly placed Bibracte on the site of Autun, but this opinion was changed as a result of the investigations of Napoleon III of France in 1865, as already mentioned in

these *Notes*. He showed that the Gauls usually chose for their towns places difficult of access, either on rugged elevations, or in the midst of extensive marshes, which were so abundant in France in those days. In Book III, Cæsar gives an elaborate account of the sites of the towns of the Veneti, on the west coast, and how difficult it was for him to reach them. Napoleon traced several ancient roads leading to the summit of Mont Beuvray, and on excavation found there the remains of foundations of Gallic walls and towers.

**decurionis**: What was his command in the army? (See *Notes* to chapter 15.)

**superioribus locis**: What is the allusion?

## CHAPTER XXIV

### *The battle*

**The place**: Colonel Stoffel, in his *Histoire de Jules César*, says the field of battle was near the village of Montmort, southeast of Mont Beuvray, and three miles northwest of Toulon.

**in prox. collem**: Cæsar could have hoped for no more fortunate turn of affairs. He was now put on the defensive, and could choose his own position. What do you notice concerning the usual situation of the battle lines? In this battle, where did he station his veteran legions? His newly enrolled legions? His foreign allies? His baggage? His camp?

Describe the form and defenses of a Roman camp. Name one particular purpose of a Roman camp, which in modern warfare it does not serve. (See *Notes* to chapter 15.)

### *The legion*

**legiones**: All legionary soldiers were *milites gravis armaturae*, "soldiers with heavy armor."

The number of men in a legion is variously estimated from 3,000 to 5,000. This contrariety is probably due to the fact that the dead and disabled were not replaced; so the older the legion in service, the smaller it became. Instead of recruits in a veteran legion, new legions were enrolled. In Cæsar's legions in Gaul, it is generally

agreed with Rüstow that each contained 3,600 men. Each legion contained ten cohorts of 360 men each, each cohort three maniples of 120 each, each maniple two centuries of sixty each. In legions thus reduced in number below the normal, the century was often called *ordo*.

*The triple formation*

On the field of battle, the cohorts were drawn up in *triplex acies*. The men of each cohort stood ten deep, and each cohort in a line stood 120 feet apart. The veteran cohorts stood in front, and the best troops were in the first cohort. The following diagram will show the arrangement of a legion in *triplex acies*, so often mentioned by Cæsar:

4	3	2	1
7	6	5	
10	9	8	

**Auxilia** : The auxiliaries were *milites levis armaturae*, "soldiers in light armor." These were slingers, who hurled stones or lead bullets, the archers or bowmen, and the cavalry.

**sarcinas** : The personal baggage of the legionary. On the march he carried his own food supply, cooking utensils, blanket, and one or two rampart stakes. This luggage was done up in a bundle and suspended from a forked pole, which he carried over his shoulder. The pole was forked, like a crutch, and served much the same purpose to a weary soldier, standing at rest. Marius devised this, and hence the phrase, the "mules of Marius." The entire weight of this individual luggage, or *sarcinæ*, was often fully sixty pounds.

**phalange** : This was a common Gallic form of charge or defense. The infantry was arranged in close masses, like the old Greek phalanx, with their heavy shields overlapping, forming a complete obstruction to the opposing javelins. The test of this arrangement was in the first furious onslaught, which often swept everything before it. If the first charge failed, the rest of the fight was at a woful disadvantage to the crowded Gauls. Sometimes, as Cæsar relates in the next chapter, the heavy javelins of the Romans penetrated the overlapping shields, thus binding them firmly together and imprisoning the wiggling, stifling mass beneath.

## CHAPTER XXV

**suo equo**: Plutarch says: "When he had drawn his forces up, as described, his horse was brought to him. Upon which he said, 'When I have won the battle, I shall want my horse for the pursuit; at present let us march, as we are, against the enemy.'"

Again, at the battle of Munda, Cæsar ordered his horse taken to the rear. May one reason for this have been his solicitude for his horse? (See *Notes* to chapter 7.) Was he a skillful rider?

Answer: "He was a good horseman, and brought that exercise to such perfection by practice that he could sit a horse at full speed, with his hands behind him." — *Plutarch*.

**scutis**: The Gallic shield was rectangular, sometimes oval, four feet long, two and one half feet wide.

**capto monte**: "When the mountain was reached," i.e., by the enemy.

**latere aperto**: "on the exposed flank." As the shield was carried on the left arm, which side would be the "exposed flank"?

**Boii et Tulingi**: Semi-Germanic tribes. Explain how they came to be in the migration (chapter 5). They had been in the van of the line of march thus far; show how they were now in the rear.

**conversa signa**: This refers only to the third battle line. What cohorts? What cohorts were engaged with the main body of the Helvetii? (See diagram in *Notes* to chapter 24.)

**Venientes**: Who were these?

## CHAPTER XXVI

**diu atque acriter**: It cost him a long and severe conflict to drive their army out of the field. The fight lasted from noon till night. The barbarians fought gallantly, and in numbers were enormously superior. Plutarch says there were 190,000 fighting men among them, while Cæsar's army did not exceed 25,000. "But the contest was between sturdy discipline and wild valor; and it concluded as such contests always must."

**ancipiti proelio**: That is, on two fronts. Explain this.

**alteri; alteri**: The Helvetii; the Boii and Tulingi.

**carros:** About how many carts are estimated to have been in the migration?

**hora septima:** "The seventh hour." What o'clock was it? (Answer: The *hora* was the unit of daylight. The time from sunrise to sunset was divided into twelve equal parts, or *horae*. The length of an *hora*, then, varied with the season from about 45 minutes to one hour and a quarter. At this particular season, the sun rose about 5 and set at 7. How many hours of daylight? *Answer 14.* How many minutes in each *hora*? *Answer 70.* Then what o'clock was it when the battle began? *Answer 1 P. M.*) Let the pupil show the solution of this problem. Let the teacher give others like it.

**pro vallo carros:** This was the usual fortification of a Gallic camp. How does this compare with the Roman?

**carros rotasque:** Some *MSS.* have *redasque*, the *reda* being a four-wheeled wagon. However, the frequency with which *hendiadys* occurs renders the first reading probable. (See Rule of Syntax, 97.)

**Orgetorigis filia:** With whom was she in camp?

**fines Lingonum:** This region lies north of Mont Beuvray; it is now called Champagne. Scholars have sometimes located the end of the flight of the Helvetii at Langres, about ninety miles from Mont Beuvray, but Napoleon makes it at Tonnerre, sixty miles west of Langres.

**The survivors:** "Half of the fighting men of the Swiss were killed; their camp was stormed; the survivors, with the remnant of the women and children (a little more than a third remained of those who had left Switzerland), struggled on to Langres, where they surrendered." — *Froude.*

**sepulturum occisorum:** The burial of the dead was a most sacred duty. The Romans believed that the spirit of the unburied roamed aimlessly on the banks of the Styx, unable to gain entrance to the land of rest.

The long delay here shows that Cæsar's army had likewise suffered sorely.

## CHAPTER XXVII

**quo tum essent:** Where were the Helvetii at this time?

**Verbigenus:** How many cantons composed the state of Helvetia? Name two.

This district lay between modern Berne and Lucerne.

**multitudine dediticiorum:** What was the number of prisoners of war? (See text of chapter 26.)

### CHAPTER XXVIII

**in hostium numero:** Euphemistic for slaughtering or selling into slavery.

**ipsoſ:** The Helvetii and their associates.

**oppida vicosque:** Whose towns and villages? How many of each? (See chapter 5.) What is the difference between *oppidum* and *vicus*?

**maxime ratione:** "chiefly for this reason," as explained in the *quod* clause following. Only about 100,000 people returned to their mountain home in Helvetia, where 300,000 had been before, and where 3,000,000 are to-day. Even these 100,000 were in large part broken-hearted women and children, a petty restraint to a horde of Germans. But this little colony, whom Cæsar could now rely upon to remain quiet and contented at home for another fifty years, was better on that treacherous frontier than no colony at all. And yet, history does show us that little by little the Germans did creep into that region, and were ready to issue into Gaul and Italy in concert with the entire Teutonic north, to wrest from Rome her possessions, carry pillage through her very streets, and leave the Western Roman Empire but a shadow of being.

As to the history of the Helvetii after their melancholy return, there is reason to believe they never recovered. Cæsar speaks of them again in the battle of Alesia, about six years later (B.C. 52), when they sent 8,000 troops. It is probable they were assimilated into the German tribes, which settled slowly in Helvetia. To-day, Switzerland is largely Germanic.

**Boios . . . concessit:** The more usual order would be *Aeduis potentibus, ut Boios in finibus suis collocarent, quod Boii egregia virtute cogniti erant, Cæsar id concessit.*

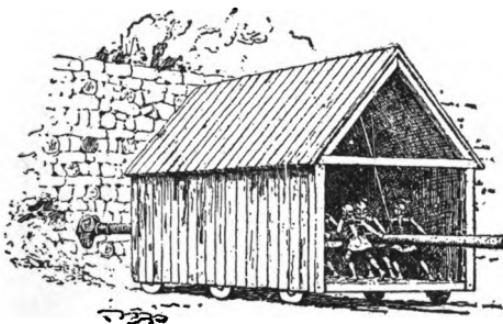
**Virtute (Boiorum):** What had the Boii done of remarkable courage?

**potentibus Aeduis:** Why did the *Ædui* want these brave allies? See *Notes* to chapter 9, as to the political situation.

## CHAPTER XXIX

**tabulae**: These lists were written on the usual "writing-tablets," which were thin, small boards, hinged at the back, so as to fold and protect the sides, covered with wax. Upon this wax, the impressions were made with an instrument called *stylus*.

**litteris Graecis**: "In Greek characters or letters," i.e. using the Greek alphabet merely, not the language, since their own language had no alphabet. The Gauls learned these letters from the Greek colonists at Marseilles.





TABLES  
OF  
DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION.

---

NOUNS.

First Declension.—A-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. naut-a, <i>a sailor.</i>	naut-ae, <i>sailors.</i>
G. naut-ae, <i>of a sailor.</i>	naut-ārum, <i>of sailors.</i>
D. naut-ae, <i>to or for a sailor.</i>	naut-īs, <i>to or for sailors.</i>
A. naut-am, <i>a sailor.</i>	naut-ās, <i>sailors.</i>
V. naut-a, <i>O sailor.</i>	naut-ae, <i>O sailors.</i>
A. naut-ā, <i>with, by, from a sailor.</i>	naut-īs, <i>with, by, from sailors.</i>

Second Declension.—O-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. serv-us	serv-ī	oppid-um	oppid-a
G. serv-ī	serv-ōrum	oppid-ī	oppid-ōrum
D. serv-ō	serv-īs	oppid-ō	oppid-īs
A. serv-um	serv-ōs	oppid-um	oppid-a
V. serv-e	serv-ī	oppid-um	oppid-a
A. serv-ō	serv-īs	oppid-ō	oppid-īs

	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	puer	puer-ī	ager	agr-ī	vir	vir-ī
G.	puer-ī	puer-ōrum	agr-ī	agr-ōrum	vir-ī	vir-ōrum
D.	puer-ō	puer-īs	agr-ō	agr-īs	vir-ō	vir-īs
A.	puer-um	puer-ōs	agr-um	agr-ōs	vir-um	vir-ōs
V.	puer	puer-ī	ager	agr-ī	vir	vir-ī
A.	puer-ō	puer-īs	agr-ō	agr-īs	vir-ō	vir-īs

## Third Declension.

## Liquid Stems.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	homō	homin-ēs	frāter	frātr-ēs
G.	homin-is	homin-um	frātr-is	frātr-um
D.	homin-ī	homin-ibus	frātr-ī	frātr-ibus
A.	homin-em	homin-ēs	frātr-em	frātr-ēs
V.	homō	homin-ēs	frāter	frātr-ēs
A.	homin-e	homin-ibus	frātr-e	frātr-ibus
N.	cōnsul	cōnsul-ēs	scriptor	scriptōr-ēs
G.	cōnsul-is	cōnsul-um	scriptōr-is	scriptōr-um
D.	cōnsul-ī	cōnsul-ibus	scriptōr-ī	scriptōr-ibus
A.	cōnsul-em	cōnsul-ēs	scriptōr-em	scriptōr-ēs
V.	cōnsul	cōnsul-ēs	scriptor	scriptōr-ēs
A.	cōnsul-e	cōnsul-ibus	scriptōr-e	scriptōr-ibus
N.	tempus	tempor-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
G.	tempor-is	tempor-um	flūmin-is	flūmin-um
D.	tempor-ī	tempor-ibus	flūmin-ī	flūmin-ibus
A.	tempus	tempor-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
V.	tempus	tempor-a	flūmen	flūmin-a
A.	tempor-e	tempor-ibus	flūmin-e	flūmin-ibus

## Mute Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. virtūs	virtūt-ēs	hiems	hiem-ēs
G. virtūt-is	virtūt-um	hiem-is	hiem-um
D. virtūt-ī	virtūt-ibus	hiem-ī	hiem-ibus
A. virtūt-em	virtūt-ēs	hiem-em	hiem-ēs
V. virtūs	virtūt-ēs	hiems	hiem-ēs
A. virtūt-e	virtūt-ibus	hiem-e	hiem-ibus
N. dux	duc-ēs	rēx	rēg-ēs
G. duc-is	duc-um	rēg-is	rēg-um
D. duc-ī	duc-ibus	rēg-ī	rēg-ibus
A. duc-em	duc-ēs	rēg-em	rēg-ēs
V. dux	duc-ēs	rēx	rēg-ēs
A. duc-e	duc-ibus	rēg-e	rēg-ibus
N. prīncep-s	prīncip-ēs	pēs	ped-ēs
G. prīncip-is	prīncip-um	ped-is	ped-um
D. prīncip-ī	prīncip-ibus	ped-ī	ped-ibus
A. prīncip-em	prīncip-ēs	ped-em	ped-ēs
V. prīncep-s	prīncip-ēs	pēs	ped-ēs
A. prīncip-e	prīncip-ibus	ped-e	ped-ibus

## Stems in i.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. cīv-is	cīv-ēs	host-is	host-ēs
G. cīv-is	cīv-iūm	host-is	host-iūm
D. cīv-ī	cīv-ibus	host-ī	host-ibus
A. cīv-em	cīv-ēs, -īs	host-em	host-ēs, -īs
V. cīv-is	cīv-ēs	host-is	host-ēs
A. cīv-e	cīv-ibus	host-e	host-ibus

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. nox	noct-ēs	animal	animāl-ia
G. noct-is	noct-ium	animāl-is	animāl-iūm
D. noct-ī	noct-ibus	animāl-ī	animāl-ibus
A. noct-em	noct-ēs, -īs	animāl	animāl-ia
V. nox	noct-ēs	animal	animāl-ia
A. noct-e	noct-ibus	animāl-ī	animāl-ibus

#### Fourth Declension.—U-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. fruct-us	fruct-ūs	corn-ū	corn-ua
G. fruct-ūs	fruct-uūm	corn-ūs	corn-uūm
D. fruct-uī, -ū	fruct-ibus	corn-ū	corn-ibus
A. fruct-um	fruct-ūs	corn-ū	corn-ua
V. fruct-us	fruct-ūs	corn-ū	corn-ua
A. fruct-ū	fruct-ibus	corn-ū	corn-ibus

#### Fifth Declension.—E-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. di-ēs	di-ēs	r-ēs	r-ēs
G. di-ēī	di-ērum	r-eī	r-ērum
D. di-ēī	di-ēbus	r-eī	r-ēbus
A. di-em	di-ēs	r-em	r-ēs
V. di-ēs	di-ēs	r-ēs	r-ēs
A. di-ē	di-ēbus	r-ē	r-ēbus

#### Special Paradigms.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. dom-us	dom-ūs	de-us	de-ī, di-ī, dī
G. dom-ūs	dom-uūm, -ōrum	de-ī	de-ōrum, de-ūm
D. dom-uī, -ō	dom-ibus	de-ō	de-īs, di-īs, dīs
A. dom-um	dom-ōs, -ūs	de-um	de-ōs
V. dom-us	dom-ūs	de-us	de-ī, di-ī, dī
A. dom-ō, -ū	dom-ibus	de-ō	de-īs, di-īs, dīs

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. <i>senex</i>	<i>sen-ēs</i>	<i>iter</i>	<i>itiner-a</i>
G. <i>sen-is</i>	<i>sen-um</i>	<i>itinér-is</i>	<i>itinér-um</i>
D. <i>sen-ī</i>	<i>sen-ibus</i>	<i>itinér-ī</i>	<i>itinér-ibus</i>
A. <i>sen-em</i>	<i>sen-ēs</i>	<i>iter</i>	<i>itinér-a</i>
V. <i>senex</i>	<i>sen-ēs</i>	<i>iter</i>	<i>itinér-a</i>
A. <i>sen-e</i>	<i>sen-ibus</i>	<i>itinér-e</i>	<i>itinér-ibus</i>

—•—

## ADJECTIVES.

## First and Second Declensions.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>bon-us</i>	<i>bon-a</i>	<i>bon-um</i>	<i>bon-ī</i>	<i>bon-ae</i>	<i>bon-a</i>
G. <i>bon-ī</i>	<i>bon-ae</i>	<i>bon-ī</i>	<i>bon-ōrum</i>	<i>bon-ārum</i>	<i>bon-ōrum</i>
D. <i>bon-ō</i>	<i>bon-ae</i>	<i>bon-ō</i>	<i>bon-īs</i>	<i>bon-īs</i>	<i>bon-īs</i>
A. <i>bon-um</i>	<i>bon-am</i>	<i>bon-um</i>	<i>bon-ōs</i>	<i>bon-ās</i>	<i>bon-a</i>
V. <i>bon-e</i>	<i>bon-a</i>	<i>bon-um</i>	<i>bon-ī</i>	<i>bon-ae</i>	<i>bon-a</i>
A. <i>bon-ō</i>	<i>bon-ā</i>	<i>bon-ō</i>	<i>bon-īs</i>	<i>bon-īs</i>	<i>bon-īs</i>

## SINGULAR.

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>miser</i>	<i>miser-a</i>	<i>miser-um</i>
G. <i>miser-ī</i>	<i>miser-ae</i>	<i>miser-ī</i>
D. <i>miser-ō</i>	<i>miser-ae</i>	<i>miser-ō</i>
A. <i>miser-um</i>	<i>miser-am</i>	<i>miser-um</i>
V. <i>miser</i>	<i>miser-a</i>	<i>miser-um</i>
A. <i>miser-ō</i>	<i>miser-ā</i>	<i>miser-ō</i>

## PLURAL.

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-a
G. miser-ōrum	miser-ārum	miser-ōrum
D. miser-īs	miser-īs	miser-īs
A. miser-ōs	miser-ās	miser-a
V. miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-a
A. miser-īs	miser-īs	miser-īs

## SINGULAR.

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
tōt-us	tōt-a	tōt-um
tōt-īus	tōt-īus	tōt-īus
tōt-ī	tōt-ī	tōt-ī
tōt-um	tōt-am	tōt-um
tōt-ō	tōt-ā	tōt-ō

## POSSESSIVE, SINGULAR OWNERSHIP.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
meus, -a, -um, <i>my.</i>	meī, -ae, -a
tuus, -a, -um, <i>thy, your.</i>	tuī, -ae, -a
suus, -a, -um, <i>his, her, its.</i>	suī, -ae, -a

## POSSESSIVE, PLURAL OWNERSHIP.

noster, -tra, -trum, <i>our.</i>	nostrī, -ae, -a
vester, -tra, -trum, <i>your.</i>	vestrī, -ae, -a
suus, -a, -um, <i>their.</i>	suī, -ae, -a

## Third Declension.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. sapiēns	sapiēns	sapient-ēs	sapient-ia
G. sapient-is	sapient-is	sapient-iūm	sapient-iūm
D. sapient-ī	sapient-ī	sapient-iūbus	sapient-iūbus
A. sapient-em	sapiēns	sapient-ēs	sapient-ia
V. sapiēns	sapiēns	sapient-ēs	sapient-ia
A. sapient-ī	sapient-ī	sapient-iūbus	sapient-iūbus

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>		
N. fort-is	fort-e	fort-ēs	fort-ia		
G. fort-is	fort-is	fort-iūm	fort-iūm		
D. fort-ī	fort-ī	fort-ibus	fort-ibus		
A. fort-em	fort-e	fort-ēs	fort-ia		
V. fort-is	fort-e	fort-ēs	fort-ia		
A. fort-ī	fort-ī	fort-ibus	fort-ibus		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e	ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
G. ācr-is	ācr-is	ācr-is	ācr-iūm	ācr-iūm	ācr-iūm
D. ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus
A. ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-e	ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
V. ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e	ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
A. ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus

## Irregular Comparison.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good.</i>	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad.</i>	pēior, -iūs	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>great.</i>	māior, -iūs	māximus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small.</i>	minor, -iūs	minimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much.</i>	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
vetus (gen. -eris), <i>old.</i>	vetustior, -iūs	veterimus, -a, -um
senex (gen. senis), <i>aged.</i>	{ senior māior nātū }	māximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, <i>young.</i>	{ iunior minor nātū }	minimus nātū

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i> .	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>difficult</i> .	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>like</i> .	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i> .	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, <i>low</i> .	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, <i>slender</i> .	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
exterus, <i>outward</i> .	exterior, <i>outer</i> .	{ extrēmus extimus } <i>outmost</i> .
inferus, <i>below</i> .	inferior, <i>lower</i> .	{ īfīmus īmus } <i>lowest</i> .
posterus, <i>following</i> .	posterior, <i>latter</i> .	{ postrēmus postumus } <i>last</i> .
superus, <i>above</i> .	superior, <i>higher</i> .	{ suprēmus summus } <i>highest</i> .
PREPOSITION.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
cis, citrā, <i>on this side</i> .	citerior, <i>hither</i> .	citimus, <i>hithermost</i> .
in, intrā, <i>within</i> .	interior, <i>inner</i> .	intimus, <i>inmost</i> .
prae, prō, <i>before</i> .	prior, <i>former</i> .	prīmus, <i>first</i> .
prope (adv.), <i>near</i> .	propior, <i>nearer</i> .	proximus { <i>nearest</i> . <i>next</i> . }
ultrā (adv.), <i>beyond</i> .	ulterior, <i>farther</i> .	ultimus, <i>farthest</i> .

## Declension of Comparatives.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. fortior	fortius	fortiōr-ēs	fortiōr-a
G. fortiōr-is	fortiōr-is	fortiōr-um	fortiōr-um
D. fortiōr-ī	fortiōr-ī	fortiōr-ibus	fortiōr-ibus
A. fortiōr-em	fortius	fortiōr-ēs, -īs	fortiōr-a
V. fortior	fortius	fortiōr-ēs	fortiōr-a
A. fortiōr-e, -ī	fortiōr-e, -ī	fortiōr-ibus	fortiōr-ibus

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	—	plüs	plür-ēs
G.	—	plür-is	plür-iūm
D.	—	—	plür-ibūs
A.	—	plüs	plür-ēs, -is
A.	—	plür-e	plür-ibūs

## Numerals.

## CARDINALS.

1.	ūnus, -a, -um	28.	duodētrīgintā
2.	duo, duae, duo	29.	ūndētrīgintā
3.	trēs, tria	30.	trīgintā
4.	quattuor	40.	quadrāgintā
5.	quinque	50.	quinquāgintā
6.	sex	60.	sexāgintā
7.	septem	70.	septuāgintā
8.	octō	80.	octōgintā
9.	novem	90.	nōnāgintā
10.	decem	100.	centum
11.	ūndecim	101.	centum ūnus
12.	duodecim	200.	ducentī, -ae, -a
13.	tredecim	300.	trecentī
14.	quattuordecim	400.	quadrīngentī
15.	quīndecim	500.	quīngentī
16.	sēdecim	600.	sexcentī
17.	septendecim	700.	septingentī
18.	duodēvigintī	800.	octingentī
19.	ūndēvigintī	900.	nōngentī
20.	vīgintī	1,000.	mille
21.	{ vīgintī ūnus ūnus et vīgintī	5,000.	quīnque mīlia
		10,000.	decem mīlia
		100,000.	centum mīlia

## ORDINALS.

1st	prīmus, -a, -um	17th	septimus decimus
2d	secundus ( <i>or</i> alter)	18th	duodēvīcēsimus
3d	tertius	19th	ūndēvīcēsimus
4th	quartus	20th	vīcēsimus
5th	quīntus	21st	{ vīcēsimus prīmus ūnus et vīcēsimus
6th	sexus	22d	{ vīcēsimus secundus alter et vīcēsimus
7th	septimus	29th	ūndētrīcēsimus
8th	octāvus	30th	trīcēsimus
9th	nōnus	40th	quadrāgēsimus
10th	decimus	100th	centēsimus
11th	ūndecimus	101st	centēsimus prīmus
12th	duodecimus	200th	ducentēsimus
13th	tertius decimus	1000th	millēsimus
14th	quartus decimus	2000th	bis millēsimus
15th	quīntus decimus		
16th	sexus decimus		

## Declension of Numerals.

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
N.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	duo	duae	duo
G.	ūniūs	ūniūs	ūniūs	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
D.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
A.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	duōs, duo	duās	duo
A.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	trēs	tria	mille
G.	trium	trium	mille
D.	tribus	tribus	mille
A.	trēs	tria	mille
A.	tribus	tribus	mille

## Pronouns.

FIRST PERSON.		SECOND PERSON.		THIRD PERSON.	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—
G.	meī	nostrūm, -trī	tuī	vestrūm, -trī	suī
D.	mihi	nōbis	tibi	vōbis	sibi
A.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē
A.	mē	nōbis	tē	vōbis	sē, sēsē

## Demonstratives.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	haec
G.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hōrum
D.	huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs
A.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās
A.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs
N.	ille	illa	iīluc̄	illī	illae
G.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illōrum
D.	illī	illī	illī	illis	illis
A.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās
A.	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis
N.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae
G.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
A.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās
A.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
N.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae
G.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istōrum
D.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs
A.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās
A.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

*M.**F.**N.**M.**F.**N.*

N.	idem	eadem	idem	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
G.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	ēarundem	eōrundem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
A.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
A.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsi	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
A.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
A.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

## Relative.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

*M.**F.**N.**M.**F.**N.*

N.	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cūi	cūi	cūi	quibus	quibus	quibus
A.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## Interrogative.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

*M.**F.**N.**M.**F.**N.*

N.	quis	quae	quid	qui	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cūi	cūi	cūi	quibus	quibus	quibus
A.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## Indefinite.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>aliquis</i>	<i>aliqua</i>	<i>aliquid</i>	<i>aliquī</i>	<i>aliquae</i>	<i>aliqua</i>
G. <i>alicūius</i>	<i>alicūius</i>	<i>alicūius</i>	<i>aliquōrum</i>	<i>aliquārum</i>	<i>aliquōrum</i>
D. <i>alicūi</i>	<i>alicūi</i>	<i>alicūi</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>
A. <i>aliquem</i>	<i>aliquam</i>	<i>aliquid</i>	<i>aliquōs</i>	<i>aliquās</i>	<i>aliqua</i>
A. <i>aliquō</i>	<i>aliquā</i>	<i>aliquō</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>

## SINGULAR.

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>quīdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quiddam</i>
G. <i>cūiusdam</i>	<i>cūiusdam</i>	<i>cūiusdam</i>
D. <i>cuīdam</i>	<i>cuīdam</i>	<i>cuīdam</i>
A. <i>quendam</i>	<i>quandam</i>	<i>quiddam</i>
A. <i>quōdam</i>	<i>quādam</i>	<i>quōdam</i>

## PLURAL.

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>quīdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
G. <i>quōrundam</i>	<i>quārundam</i>	<i>quōrundam</i>
D. <i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>
A. <i>quōsdam</i>	<i>quāsdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
A. <i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>

## REGULAR VERBS.

## First Conjugation.—Ā-Verbs.

amō, *love.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus.

## INDICATIVE.

## Active Voice.

## Passive Voice.

## PRESENT.

*I love, am loving, do love, etc.**I am loved, etc.*

amō	amāmus
amās	amātis
amat	amant

amor	amāmur
amāris or -re	amāminī
amātur	amantur

## IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.**I was loved, etc.*

amābam	amābāmus
amābās	amābātis
amābat	amābant

amābar	amābāmur
amābāris or -re	amābāminī
amābātūr	amābāntur

## FUTURE.

*I shall love, etc.**I shall be loved, etc.*

amābō	amābimus
amābis	amābitis
amābit	amābunt

amābor	amābimur
amāberis or -re	amābiminī
amābitur	amābuntur

## PERFECT.

*I have loved, I loved, etc.**I have been (was) loved, etc.*

amāvī	amāvimus
amāvistī	amāvistis
amāvit	amāvērunt or -re

amātus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{amātī} \\ \text{estis} \end{array} \right.$

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had loved, etc.*

amāveram	amāverāmus
amāverās	amāverātis
amāverat	amāverant

*I had been loved, etc.*

amātus	eram erās erat	amātī	erāmus erātis erant
--------	----------------------	-------	---------------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have loved, etc. -*

amāverō	amāverimus
amāveris	amāveritis
amāverit	amāverint

*I shall have been loved, etc.*

amātus	erō eris erit	amātī	erimus eritis erunt
--------	---------------------	-------	---------------------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris <i>or</i> -re	amēmini
amet	ament	amētūr	amentur

## IMPERFECT.

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris <i>or</i> -re	amārēmini
amāret	amārent	amārētūr	amārentur

## PERFECT.

amāverim	amāverimus	amātus	sim	amātī	sīmus
amāveris	amāveritis		sīs		sītis
amāverit	amāverint		sit		sint

## PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus	essem	amātī	essēmus
amāvissēs	amāvissētis		essēs		essētis
amāvissēt	amāvissent		esset		essent

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

amā, *love thou.*  
amāte, *love ye.*

amāre, *be thou loved.*  
amāminī, *be ye loved.*

## FUTURE.

amātō, *thou shalt love.*  
amātō, *he shall love.*  
amātōte, *you shall love.*  
amantō, *they shall love.*

amātor, *thou shalt be loved.*  
amātor, *he shall be loved.*  
—  
amantor, *they shall be loved.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. amāre, *to love.*  
PERF. amāvisse, *to have loved.*  
FUT. amātūrus esse, *to be about to love.*

amārī, *to be loved.*  
amātūs esse, *to have been loved.*  
amātūm īrī, *to be about to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. amāns, -antis, *loving.*  
FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.*  
PERF. —

PRES. —  
GER.<sup>1</sup> amandus, -a, -um, *to be loved.*  
PERF. amātūs, -a, -um, *loved, having been loved.*

## GERUND.

N. —  
G. amandī, *of loving.*  
D. amandō, *for loving.*  
A. amandum, *loving.*  
A. amandō, *by loving.*

## SUPINE.

—  
—  
—  
A. amātūm, *to love.*  
A. amātū, *to love, to be loved.*

<sup>1</sup> Gerundive, sometimes called future passive participle.

Second Conjugation.—**Ē**-Verbs.*moneō, advise.*PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.**

		INDICATIVE.	
<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
<i>I advise, etc.</i>		<i>I am advised, etc.</i>	
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris <i>or</i> -re	monēminī
monet	monent	monētur	monentur
<i>I was advising, etc.</i>		<i>I was advised, etc.</i>	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris <i>or</i> -re	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātūr	monēbāntur
<i>I shall advise, etc.</i>		<i>I shall be advised, etc.</i>	
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis <i>or</i> -re	monēbiminī
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur
<i>I have advised, I advised, etc.</i>		<i>I have been (was) advised, etc.</i>	
monuī	monuīmus	sum	sumus
monuistī	monuistis	monitus { es	monitī { estis
monuit	monuērunt <i>or</i> -re	est	sunt
<i>I had advised, etc.</i>		<i>I had been advised, etc.</i>	
monueram	monuerāmus	eram	erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis	monitus { erās	monitī { erātis
monuerat	monuerant	erat	erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have advised, etc.*monuerō monuerimus  
monueris monueritis  
monuerit monuerint*I shall have been advised, etc.*monitus { erō  
eris monitī { erimus  
erit eritis  
erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

moneam moneāmus  
moneās moneātis  
moneat moneantmonear moneāmur  
moneāris or -re moneāminī  
moneātur moneantur

## IMPERFECT.

monērem monērēmus  
monērēs monērētis  
monēret monērentmonērer monērēmur  
monērēris or -re monērēminī  
monērētur monērentur

## PERFECT.

monuerim monuerimus  
monueris monueritis  
monuerit monuerintmonitus { sim  
sīs monitī { sīmus  
sīt sītis  
sītis  
sīnt

## PLUPERFECT.

monuissem monuissēmus  
monuissēs monuissētis  
monuisset monuissentmonitus { essem  
essēs monitī { essēmus  
esset essētis  
essent

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

*monē, advise thou.**monēre, be thou advised.**monēte, advise ye.**monēminī, be ye advised.*

## FUTURE.

*monētō, thou shalt advise.*  
*monētō, he shall advise.*  
*monētōte, you shall advise.*  
*monentō, they shall advise.**monētor, thou shalt be advised.*  
*monētor, he shall be advised.*  
—  
*monentor, they shall be advised.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. *monēre*, *to advise*.      *monērī*, *to be advised*.  
 PERF. *monuisse*, *to have advised*.      *monitus esse*, *to have been advised*.  
 FUT. *monitūrus esse*, *to be about to advise*.      *monitum īrī*, *to be about to be advised*.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. *monēns*, *-entis*, *advising*.      PRES. —  
 FUT. *monitūrus*, *-a*, *um*, *about to advise*.      GER. *monendus*, *-a*, *-um*, *to be advised*.  
 PERF. —      PERF. *monitus*, *-a*, *-um*, *advised*, *having been advised*.

## GERUND.

N. —  
 G. *monendī*, *of advising*.  
 D. *monendō*, *for advising*.  
 A. *monendum*, *advising*.  
 A. *monendō*, *by advising*.

## SUPINE.

—  
 —  
 —  
 A. *monitum*, *to advise*.  
 A. *monitū*, *to advise, to be advised*.

## Third Conjugation.—E-Verbs.

*regō*, *rule*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *regō*, *regere*, *rēxi*, *rēctus*.

## INDICATIVE.

## Active.

*I rule*, etc.

<i>regō</i>	<i>regimus</i>
<i>regis</i>	<i>regitis</i>
<i>regit</i>	<i>regunt</i>

## Passive.

## PRESENT.

*I am ruled*, etc.

<i>regor</i>	<i>regimur</i>
<i>regeris or -re</i>	<i>regiminī</i>
<i>regitur</i>	<i>reguntur</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling, etc.*

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

*I was ruled, etc.*

regēbar	regēbāmūr
regēbāris or -re	regēbāmīnī
regēbātūr	regēbāntūr

## FUTURE.

*I shall rule, etc.*

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
reget	regent

*I shall be ruled, etc.*

regar	regēmūr
regēris or -re	regēmīnī
regētūr	regentūr

## PERFECT.

*I have ruled, etc.*

rēxi	rēximus
rēxistī	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxērunt or -re

*I have been ruled, etc.*

rēctus	sum es est	sumus estis sunt
--------	------------------	------------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled, etc.*

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

*I had been ruled, etc.*

rēctus	erām erās erat	erāmus erātis erant
--------	----------------------	---------------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have ruled, etc.*

rēxerō	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

*I shall have been ruled, etc.*

rēctus	erō eris erit	erimus eritis erunt
--------	---------------------	---------------------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

regam	regāmus
regās	regātis
regat	regant

regar	regāmūr
regāris or -re	regāmīnī
regātūr	regantūr

## IMPERFECT.

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris or -re	regerēmini
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

## PERFECT.

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus	sim
rēxeris	rēxeritis		sīs
rēxerit	rēxerint		sit

rēctī	sīmus
	sītis
	sint

## PLUPERFECT.

rēxissem	rēxissēmus	rēctus	essem
rēxissēs	rēxissētis		essēs
rēxisset	rēxissent		esset

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

rege, rule thou.

regere, be thou ruled.

regite, rule ye.

regimini, be ye ruled.

## FUTURE.

regitō, thou shalt rule.

regitor, thou shalt be ruled.

regitō, he shall rule.

regitor, he shall be ruled.

regitōte, ye shall rule.

—

reguntō, they shall rule.

reguntor, they shall be ruled.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. regere, to rule.

regi, to be ruled.

PERF. rēxisse, to have ruled.

rēctus esse, to have been ruled.

FUT. rēctūrus esse, to be  
about to rule.rēctum īrī, to be about to be  
ruled.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. regēns, -entis, ruling.

PRES. —

FUT. rēctūrus, -a, -um, about  
to rule.GER. regendus, -a, -um, to be  
ruled.

PERF. —

PERF. rēctus, -a, -um, ruled,  
having been ruled.

GERUND.		SUPINE.	
N.	—	—	—
G.	regendi, of ruling.	—	—
D.	regendō, for ruling.	—	—
A.	regendum, ruling.	A.	rēctum, to rule.
A.	regendō, by ruling.	A.	rēctū, to rule, to be rulea.

## Third Conjugation.—Verbs in -iō.

capiō, take.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Active.

## Passive.

I take, etc.		I am taken, etc.	
capiō	capiimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis or -re	capimini
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

## IMPERFECT.

I was taking, etc.		I was taken, etc.	
capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmūi
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris or -re	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātūr	capiēbāntūr

## FUTURE.

I shall take, etc.		I shall be taken, etc.	
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris or -re	capiēminī
capiet	capiētūr	capiētūr	capiēntūr

## PERFECT.

cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc. captus sum, es, est, etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc. captus eram, erās, erat, etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus erō, eris, erit, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

capiam, capiās, capiat, etc. capiar, -iāris or -re, -iātur, etc.

## IMPERFECT.

caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc. caperer, -erēris or -re, -erētur, etc.

## PERFECT.

cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus sim, sīs, sit, etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

cēpissem, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc. captus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cape, *take thou.* capere, *be thou taken.*

capite, *take ye.* capimini, *be ye taken.*

FUT. capitō, *thou shalt take,* capitor, *thou shalt be taken,*  
etc. etc.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. capere, *to take.* capi, *to be taken.*

PERF. cēpisse, *to have taken.* captus esse, *to have been taken.*

FUT. captūrus esse, *to be about to take.* captum īrī, *to be about to be taken.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. capiēns, -ientis, *taking.* PRES. —

FUT. captūrus, *about to take.* GER. capiendus, *to be taken.*

PERF. — PERF. captus, *having been taken.*

## GERUND.

G. capiendi, *of taking,*  
etc.

## SUPINE.

A. captum, *to take.*  
A. captū, *to take, to be taken.*

Fourth Conjugation.—**I**-Verbs.

audiō, hear.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvi, audītus.

## INDICATIVE.

## Active.

## Passive.

## PRESENT.

*I hear, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

audiō	audiimus	audior	audiūrur
audiōs	audiōtis	audiōris or -re	audiōminī
audiōt	audiōtunt	audiōtūr	audiōtūrunt

## IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmūr
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris or -re	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbānt	audiēbātūr	audiēbāntūr

## FUTURE.

*I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

audiām	audiēmūs	audiār	audiēmūr
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris or -re	audiēminī
audiēt	audiētūt	audiētūr	audiētūrunt

## PERFECT.

*I have heard, etc.**I have been heard, etc.*

audiōvī	audiōvīmus	audiōtūs	sum
audiōvīstī	audiōvīstis	es	audiōtū
audiōvīt	audiōvīrunt or -re	est	estīs

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard, etc.*

audīveram	audīverāmus
audīverās	audīverātis
audīverat	audīverant

*I had been heard, etc.*

audītus	eram	audītī	erāmus
	erās		erātis
	erat		erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have heard, etc.*

audīverō	audīverimus
audīveris	audīveritis
audīverit	audīverint

*I shall have been heard, etc.*

audītus	erō	audītī	erimus
	eris		eritis
	erit		erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

audiām	audiāmus	audiār	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris <i>or</i> -re	audiāminī
audiāt	audiānt	audiātūr	audiāntur

## IMPERFECT.

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris <i>or</i> -re	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētūr	audīrentur

## PERFECT.

audīverim	audīverimus	auditūs	sim	audītī	sīmus
audīveris	audīveritis		sīs		sītis
audīverit	audīverint		sīt		sīnt

## PLUPERFECT.

audīvissem	audīvissēmus	auditūs	essem	audītī	essēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis		essēs		essētis
audīvissēt	audīvissētēt		essētēt		essētētēt

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

*audī, hear thou.*  
*audite, hear ye.*

*audīre, be thou heard.*  
*audīmini, be ye heard.*

## FUTURE.

*audītō, thou shalt hear.*  
*auditō, he shall hear.*  
*auditōte, ye shall hear.*  
*audiuntō, they shall hear.*

*audītor, thou shalt be heard.*  
*audītor, he shall be heard.*  
—  
*audiuntor, they shall be heard.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. *audire, to hear.*  
PERF. *audīsse, to have heard.*  
FUT. *audītūrus esse, to be  
about to hear.*

*audīrī, to be heard.*  
*audītūs esse, to have been heard.*  
*audītūm īrī, to be about to be  
heard.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. *audiēns, -entis, hearing.*  
FUT. *auditūrus, -a, -um, about  
to hear.*  
PERF. —

PRES. —  
GER. *audiendus, -a, -um, to  
be heard.*  
PERF. *auditūs, -a, -um, heard,  
having been heard.*

## GERUND.

N. —  
G. *audiendī, of hearing.*  
D. *audiendō, for hearing.*  
A. *audiendum, hearing.*  
A. *audiendō, by hearing.*

## SUPINE.

—  
—  
—  
A. *auditūm, to hear.*  
A. *auditū, to hear, to be  
heard.*

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

sum, *be.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

sum, *I am.*  
es, *thou art.*  
est, *he (she, it) is.*

## PLURAL.

sumus, *we are.*  
estis, *you are.*  
sunt, *they are.*

## IMPERFECT.

eram, *I was.*  
erās, *thou wast.*  
erat, *he was.*

erāmus, *we were.*  
erātis, *you were.*  
erant, *they were.*

## FUTURE.

erō, *I shall be.*  
eris, *thou wilt be.*  
erit, *he will be.*

erimus, *we shall be.*  
eritis, *you will be.*  
erunt, *they will be.*

## PERFECT.

fuī, *I have been, was.*  
fuistī, *thou hast been, wast.*  
fuit, *he has been, was.*

fuimus, *we have been, were.*  
fuistis, *you have been, were.*  
fuērunt or  
fuērē, *they have been, were.*

## PLUPERFECT.

fueram, *I had been.*  
fuerās, *thou hadst been.*  
fuerat, *he had been.*

fuerāmus, *we had been.*  
fuerātis, *you had been.*  
fuerant, *they had been.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

fuerō, *I shall have been.*  
fueris, *thou wilt have been.*  
fuerit, *he will have been.*

fuerimus, *we shall have been.*  
fueritis, *you will have been.*  
fuerint, *they will have been.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
sim	sīmus
sīs	sītis
sit	sint

## PERFECT.

fuerim	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

## IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
essem	essēmus
essēs	essētis
esset	essent

PLUPERFECT.	
fuissem	fuissēmus
fuissēs	fuissētis
fuisset	fuissent

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
es, be thou.	este, be ye.

## FUTURE.

estō, thou shalt be.	estōte, ye shall be.
estō, he shall be.	suntō, they shall be.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. esse, to be.

PERF. fuisse, to have been.

FUT. futūrus esse, to be about to be.      futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.

## PARTICIPLE.

possum, posse, potuī, —, be able, can.

## INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES. possum	possumus	possim	possimus
potes	potestis	possis	possitīs
potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMP. poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT. poterō	poterimus		
PERF. potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
PLUP. potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
F. P. potuerō	potuerimus		

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. posse      PERF. potuisse

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, *benefit.*

## INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES. prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim	prōsimus
prōdes	prōdestis	prōsis	prōsitis
prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
IMP. prōderam	prōderāmus	prōdessem	prōdēssemus
FUT. prōderō	prōderimus		
PERF. prōfui	prōfuius	prōfuerim	prōfuerimus
PLUP. prōfueram	prōfuerāmus	prōfuissem	prōfuiissēmus
F. P. prōfuerō	prōfuerimus		

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. prōdes, prōdeste	FUT. prōdestō, prōdestōte
------------------------	---------------------------

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. prōdesse	PERF. prōfuisse	FUT. prōfutūrus esse
----------------	-----------------	----------------------

## PARTICIPLE.

FUT. prōfutūrus, -a, -um
--------------------------

volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, will, wish.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, will not.*

mālō, mālle, māluī, —, *be more willing, prefer.*

## INDICATIVE.

PRES. volō	nōlō	mālō
vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
vult	nōn vult	māvult
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMP. volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT. volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF. voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP. volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P. voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velis	nōlis	mālis
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velimus	nōlimus	mālimus
	velitis	nōlitis	mālitis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMP.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	—	nōli	—
		nōlite	—

FUT.	—	nōlitō, etc.	—
------	---	--------------	---

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	—
-------	--------	--------	---

eō, ire, ivi (ii), itūrus, go.

fiō, fieri, factus sum (supplies passive to faciō), make, be made, become.

## INDICATIVE.

PRES.	eō	īmus	fiō	fiīmus
	īs	ītis	fiīs	fiītis
	īt	eunt	fiīt	fiūnt
IMP.		ībam	fiēbam	
FUT.		ībō	fiām	
PERF.		īi	factus sum	
PLUP.		īeram	factus eram	
F. P.		īerō	factus erō	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	eam	fiam
IMP.	īrem	fierem
PERF.	ierim	factus sim
PLUP.	īissem	factus essem

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	I	īte	ī	fite
FUT.	{ ītō ītō	ītōte euntō	— —	— —

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	īre	fieri
PERF.	īsse	factus esse
FUT.	ītūrus esse	factum īrī

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	iēns, <i>Gen.</i> euntis	PRES.	—
FUT.	ītūrus, -a, -um	GER.	faciendus
PERF.	—	PERF.	factus

## GERUND.

N.	—
G.	eundi
D.	eundō
A.	eundum
A.	eundō

## SUPINE.

A.	itum
A.	itū

*ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear, carry, endure.*

## INDICATIVE.

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>		
PRES.	{ ferō fers fert	ferimus fertis ferunt	feror ferris <i>or -re</i> fertur	ferimur feriminī feruntur
IMP.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī		lātus sum	
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus eram	
F. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMP.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulisse	lātus essem

## IMPERATIVE.

## Active.

## Passive.

PRES.	fer	ferte	[ferre]	ferimini
FUT.	{ fertō fertō	fertōte feruntō	fertor fertor	— feruntor

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum iri

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	ferēns	PRES. —
FUT.	lātūrus	GER. ferendus
PERF.	—	PERF. lātus

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

G.	ferendī	—
D.	ferendō	—
A.	ferendum	A. lātum
A.	ferendō	A. lātū

## VOCABULARY

---

### A

**A.**, see **Aulus**.

**ā**, *ab*, prep. with abl., *from, by, on the side of*.

**abdō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *put away, withdraw, hide.*

**abdūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead away.*

**abstineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold from, keep from.*

**absum**, -esse, -āfui, *be away or distant.*

**āc**, see **atque** (**āc** is used only before consonants).

**accēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *go to, approach, be added.*

**accidō**, -cidere, -cidi, *fall to or upon, befall, happen.*

**accipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [capiō], *take to, receive, accept.*

**accurrō**, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *run or hasten to.*

**accūsō** (1) [**causa**], *call to account, reprimand, accuse.*

**aciēs**, -ēi, f., *battle-line.*

**ācriter**, adv., *sharply, fiercely.*

**ad**, prep. with acc., *to, toward,*

*against, near; (with numerals) adv., about.*

**addūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead or bring to, influence.*

**adgredior**, see **aggredior**.

**adhibeō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *bring in, summon.*

**admiror** (1), *wonder at, admire.*

**admittō**, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [ad + mittō] (3), *let go; admit, receive; become guilty of, commit. equō admissō, with his horse at full speed* (i. 22).

**adorior**, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *rise against, attack.*

**adsciscō**, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *take to, receive, adopt.*

**adsum**, -esse, -fui, *be at hand or near, be present, assist.*

**adventus**, -ūs, m. [veniō], *arrival, approach.*

**adversus**, -a, -um (perf. pass. part. of advertō), *turned to, opposite, unfavorable, unsuccessful.*

**advertō**, -tere, -tī, -sum [ad + vertō] (3), *turn to, direct, turn. animum advertō, perceive, notice, observe.*

**aedificium**, -i, n., *a building*.

**Aeduus**, -i, m., *an Æduan*.

**aegerrimē**, adv. (sup. of aegrē),  
*with the greatest difficulty*.

**equō** (i), *make even or equal*.

**afficiō**, -ficere, -fēci, *fectum* [ad  
+ faciō] (3), *do something to*,  
*treat, use; visit with, afflict*,  
*trouble, weaken, impair*. **magnō**  
**dolōre affici**, *to be greatly an-*  
*noyed* (i. 2). **suppliciō afficere**,  
*to punish* (i. 27).

**affinitās**, -atis, f., *alliance by*  
*marriage, kinship*.

**ager**, agrī, m., *land under culti-*  
*vation, field, territory, domain*;  
pl., *lands, territory, country*,  
*the country*.

**agredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum  
[ad + gradior, *step*], *go to, ap-*  
*proach, attack*.

**agmen**, -minis [agō], n., *army on*  
*the march, marching column*;  
*line of march*. **agmen clau-**  
**dere**, *to bring up the rear*.  
**novissimum agmen**, *the rear*.  
**primum agmen**, *the van*.

**agō**, agere, ēgī, ēctum, *put in*  
*motion, drive, discuss*.

**aliēnus**, -a, -um [alius], *another's*,  
*foreign, unfavorable*.

**aliquī** (-quis), -qua, -quod (-quid),  
*some, any*.

**alius**, -a, -ud, *another, other* (of  
more than two).

**Allobrogēs**, -um (acc. Allobrogās,  
i. 14), m., pl., *a Gallic people*

in the northeastern part of  
“the Province,” between the  
Rhone and the Alps. i. 6, 10,  
11, 14, 28.

**alō**, alere, aluī, *alitum (altum)*,  
*nourish, sustain*.

**Alpēs**, -ium, f., *the Alps*.

**alter**, -era, -erum, *one* (of two),  
*the other, second*.

**altitūdō**, -inis, f. [altus], *height*,  
*depth*.

**altus**, -a, -um, *high, deep*.

**Ambarri**, -ōrum [Kel. ambi, =  
Lat. ambi + Arar], m. pl., *a*  
*people on both sides of the*  
*Arar (Saône) near its junction*  
*with the Rhone; intimately*  
*connected with the Ædui*.  
i. 11, 14.

**amicitia**, -ae, f. [amicus], *friend-*  
*ship*.

**amicus**, -a, -um, *friendly*; (as  
subst.) m., *friend*.

**āmittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum,  
*send away, let go, lose*.

**amor**, -ōris, m. [amō], *love, de-*  
*sire*.

**amplus**, -a, -um, *large or full*,  
*ample*.

**anceps**, -cipitis [ambō, *both* +  
caput, *head*], *two-headed, two-*  
*fold, doubtful*.

**angustiae**, -ārum, f. [angō,  
*squeeze*], *narrowness, a narrow*  
*pass or defile*.

**angustus**, -a, -um [angō], *nar-*  
*row*.

**animadvertisō**, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *attend to, punish.*

**animus**, -ī, m., *soul, mind, feeling, spirit, courage.*

**annus**, -ī, m., *a year.*

**annuus**, -a, -um, *for a year, annual.*

**ante**, adv. or prep. with acc., *before.*

**anteā**, adv., *formerly.*

**antiquus**, -a, -um [ante], *ancient, former.*

**aperiō**, -ire, -uī, -tum, *uncover, open, disclose.*

**appellō** (1), *call.*

**Aprilis**, -e, *of April, April.*

**apud**, prep. with acc., *among, near, with.*

**Aquilēia**, -ae, f., *a city at the head of the Adriatic Sea. See n. to chap. X.* i. 10.

**Aquitāni**, -ōrum, m., *the Aquitani, Aquitanians.*

**Aquitānia**, -ae, f., *Aquitania.*

**Arar**, -aris, acc., -im [Kel., = 'sluggish'], m., *Arar river, now the Sabne.* It rises in the Vosges Mts., and flows southward into the Rhone. i. 12, 13, 16.

**arbitror** (1), *decide, think.*

**arma**, -ōrum, n., *arms.*

**ascendō**, ascendere, ascendī, as-cēnum [ad + scandō, *climb*], *climb up, ascend.*

**ascēnsus**, -ūs, m., *a climbing up, ascent.*

**atque, āc** [ad + que], conj.:

1. *Copulative, and, and also, and even, and in particular.*

2. *Comparative, after words of likeness or unlikeness, as. than.*

**attingō**, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum [ad + tangō, *touch*], *touch or border upon, lie near to, reach.*

**auctōritās**, -ātis, f., *influence, authority.*

**audācia**, -ae, f. [audāx], *boldness.*

**audācter**, adv., *boldly.*

**audeō**, audēre, ausus sum, *dare.* **augeō**, augēre, auxī, auctum, *increase.*

**Aulus** (abbr. **A.**), *Aulus*, a Roman name.

**aut**, conj., aut . . . aut, *either . . . or.*

**autem**, conj., *on the other hand, but, moreover.*

**auxiliūm**, -ī, n. [augeō], *help, aid;* (in pl.) *auxiliaries.*

**āvertō**, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *turn off or away.*

**avus**, -ī, m., *grandfather.*

## B

**Belgæ**, -ārum, m., *the Belgæ, Belgians, a powerful people of Northeastern Gaul.*

**bellō** (1), *make or wage war, fight.*

**bellicōsus**, -a, -um, *fond of war, warlike.*

**beneficium**, -i, n., *kindness, benefit, favor.*

**Bibracte**, -is, n., *Bibracte.*

**biduum**, -i, n., *two days.*

**biennium**, -i, n. [annus], *two years.*

**bipartitō**, adv. [pars], *in two divisions.*

**Biturigēs**, -um [Kel., = 'World-kings,' or 'Ever kings'], m. pl., a people in Central Gaul, across the Liger (Loire) from the *Ædui*.

**Bōii** (or **Bōji**), -ōrum, m., pl., a Keltic people widely diffused over Central Europe, whose name survives in *Bohemia*; 32,000 joined the *Helvetii* in their migration, the remnant surviving being settled with the *Ædui*.

**bonitās**, -tatis [bonus], f., *goodness, excellence; of land, fertility* (i. 28).

**bonus**, -a, -um, comp. *meliōr*, sup. *optimus*, adj., *good, advantageous; pleasant, well-disposed, friendly.* *bonō animō esse, to be favorably disposed.* (i. 6.)

**bracchium**, -i, n., *the forearm.*

**C**

**C.** (abbr. for **Gāius**), *Caius* or *Gaius*, a Roman name.

**cadō**, *cadere, cecidi, cāsum, fall.*

**Caesar**, *Caesaris*, m., full name *Gāius Iulius Caesar.*

**calamitās**, -ātis, f., *disaster, defeat.*

**capiō**, *capere, cēpi, captum, take, seize.*

**caput**, *capitis, n., head.*

**carrus**, i, m., *cart.*

**Cassiānus**, -a, -um, *Cassian, of Cassius.*

**Cassius**, -i, m., *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, praetor B.C. 111; when consul, 107 B.C., he engaged in battle with the *Tigurini* in the territory of the *Allobroges*, and was defeated and slain. i. 7, 12.

**castellum**, -i, n. [diminutive of *castrum*], *a small fort, fortress, redoubt.*

**Casticus**, -i, m., *Casticus.*

**castra**, -ōrum, n. [castrum, *fort*], *a fortified camp, camp.*

**cāsus**, -ūs [cadō], *a falling, fall, accident, calamity, chance.*

**Catamantāloedia**, -is [Kel., = 'Man of Even Temper'], m., foremost man of the *Sequani* before Cæsar's time. i. 3.

**Caturigēs**, -um [Kel., = 'Battle-Kings'], m. pl., a Gallic people in the eastern part of the Province. i. 10.

**causa**, -ae, f., *cause, reason.*

**caveō**, *cavēre, cāvī, cautum, take precautions.*

**celeriter** (comp. *celerius*, sup. *celerrimē*), adv., *quickly.*

**Celtae**, -ārum [Kel.], m., pl.,

*Celts*, inhabitants of that part of Gaul between the Garonne and the Seine, extending from the Atlantic to the Alps. They belonged to the great Keltic family, and were divided into many states or tribes. i. *i.*

*cēnsus*, -ūs, m., *enumeration*.

*centum*, indecl. num., *one hundred*.

*certus*, -a, -um, *sure, certain*.  
*aliquem certiōrem facere*, *to inform some one*.

*Ceutrōnes*, -um, m., *the Ceutrones*.

*cibārius*, -a, -um, *pertaining to food*; (as subst.) *cibāria*, -ōrum, n., *food, provisions*.

*circiter*, adv., *about*.

*circuitus*, -ūs, m. [*circum* + *eō*], *a going round, circuit*.

*circum*, prep. with acc., *around, about*.

*circumveniō*, -venīre, -vēnī, -venītum, *surround*.

*citerior*, -ōris, comp. adj. (no positive), *nearer, hither*.

*citrā*, adv. and prep. with acc., *this side, within*.

*civitās*, -ātis, f., *citizenship, state, citizens*.

*claudō*, *claudere*, *clausi*, *clausum*, *shut, close*.

*cliēns*, -entis, m. f., *client, dependent*.

*coemō*, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *purchase*.

*coepī*, *coepisse, defect. verb, began*.

*coerceō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *control*.  
*cōgnōscō*, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnītum, *learn thoroughly; (in perf.) have learned, know*.

*cōgō*, *cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, drive together, collect, compel*.

*cohortor* (1), *urge earnestly, exhort, encourage*.

*colligō* (1), *bind together*.

*collis*, -is, m., *hill*.

*collocō* (1), *place together, station*.  
*nuptum collocāre*, *to give in marriage*.

*colloquor*, -loquī, -locūtus sum, *speak together, converse*.

*combūrō*, -būrere, -būssī, -būstum, *burn up, consume*.

*commemorō* (1), *recount, state, mention*.

*commeō* (1), *resort to or visit (frequently)*.

*committō*, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīsum, *send together, commit, combine, join*.

*commodeō*, adv., *conveniently*.

*commonefaciō*, -facere, -fēci, -factum, *remind forcibly*.

*commoveō*, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move deeply, disturb, excite*.

*communiō* (4), *fortify completely, intrench*. [change.

*commūtatiō*, -ōnis, f., *a changing, commūtō* (1), *change entirely, reverse*.

**comparō** (1), *prepare, furnish, equip.*

**comperiō**, -perire, -peri, -pertum, *ascertain.*

**complector**, -pecti, -plexus sum, *embrace.*

**compleō**, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *fill, fill up, complete.*

**complūrēs**, -a (-ia), *several, many.*

**comportō**, *bring or carry together.*

**cōnātum**, -i, n., or **cōnātus**, -ūs, m., *trial, attempt.*

**cōncēdō**, -cēdere, *cessi, cessūrus, [com- + cēdō]* (3), *withdraw, depart; give up, yield, bow, submit; allow, grant; grant permission, permit.*

**concido**, -cidere, -cīdi, -cīsum, *cut down, slay.*

**conciliō** (1), *call together, win over, conciliate.*

**concilium**, -i, n., *assembly, council.*

**concurrus**, -ūs, m., *running together, onset.*

**condiciō**, -ōnis, f., *a speaking together, agreement, terms.*

**condōnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [com- + dōnō] (1), *give up, forgive, overlook, excuse, pardon.* i. 20.

**condūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead or bring together, hire.*

**cōnfērō**, *cōnfēre, contulī, collātum, bring together, collect, compare: sō cōnfēre, to retreat.*

**cōnfertus**, -a, -um, *crowded.*

**cōnficiō**, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, *do thoroughly, complete, accomplish.*

**cōfidō**, -fidere, -fīsus sum, *trust in, rely on.*

**cōfirmō** (1), *make firm, establish, assure, promise.*

**cōniciō**, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, *throw together, conjecture.*

**cōniūrātiō**, -ōnis, f. [iūrō, *swear*], *a swearing together, conspiracy.*

**cōnōr** (1), *try, attempt.*

**conquirō**, -quirere, -quīsīvī, -quisitum, *search out.*

**cōnsanguineus**, -a, -um, *related by blood; (as subst.) n., kinsman.*

**cōnscīscō**, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *decree, appoint.*

**cōnscious**, -a, -um [sciō], *knowing, conscious.*

**cōnscribō**, -scribēre, -scripsī, -scriptum, *write together, enroll, levy.*

**cōsequor**, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue, obtain.*

**Cōnsidius**, -i, m., *Considius.*

**cōnsidō**, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, *settle, encamp.*

**cōnsilium**, -i, n., *counsel, plan.*

**cōnsistō**, -sistere, -stītī, -stitum, *take a stand, stand still, stop.*

**cōnsōlōr** (1), *console, comfort, solace.*

**cōnspectus**, -ūs, m. [cōnspiciō], *a looking at, sight.*

cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, *see, perceive.*

cōspicor (1), *perceive.*

cōstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum [statuō, *set*], *set together, arrange, determine.*

cōsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, *accustom, habituate; (in perf.) to have become (= be) accustomed, be wont.*

cōsul, -ulīs, m., *consul*, one of the chief magistrates at Rome, of whom there were two, chosen annually.

cōsūmō, -sūmēre, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, *destroy, consume.*

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum [tendō, *stretch*], *stretch tight, strive, fight, hasten.*

continenter [continēns], adv., *constantly, incessantly, without interruption, continually.*

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [com- + teneō] (2), *hold together; hold; hold back, keep, retain, detain, shut in; of places and regions, hem in, bound, border.*

contrā, prep. with acc., and adv., *opposite, against.* [nity.]

contumēlia, -ae, f., *affront, indig-  
conveniō, -venīrē, -vēnī, -ventum, come together, meet, assemble; convenit (impers.), it is fitting, it is agreed.*

conventus, -ūs, m., *assembly, meeting.*

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *turn. signa convertere, change front, wheel about.*

convocō (1), *call together, summon, assemble.*

cōpia, -ae, f., *plenty; (in pl.) forces, troops.*

cōpōsus, -a, -um, *well supplied, plentiful, abounding.*

cotidiānus (quo-), -a, -um, *daily, usual.*

cotidiē (quo-), adv., *daily.*

Crassus, -ī, m.:

1. *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, consul in B.C. 70, member of the triumvirate with Cæsar and Pompey; consul again in 55; perished in the disastrous Parthian expedition, B.C. 53. i. 21.
2. *Publius Licinius Crassus*, younger son of the triumvir; lieutenant of Cæsar in Gaul, B.C. 58-56, where he distinguished himself; he returned to Rome in 55, followed his father to the East and fell in the same battle.

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1), *burn. Igni cremāre, to consume by fire, burn to death (i. 4).*

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1), *create, make; choose, elect, appoint.*

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum (3), *inch., grow, increase; become great, become powerful (i. 20); of a river, become swollen.*

cultus, -ūs [colō], m., *cultivation,*

*care; mode of life, civilization.*

**cum**, prep. with ablative only, *with*; of association, *with*, *along with, in the company of, together with*; of comparison, *with, as over against, compared with*; of manner and circumstance, *with, under, amid, at*; of time, *together with, at the same time with*. With the personal pronouns and with *qui*, **cum** is enclitic; as, *mōcum, nōbiscum, quibuscum*.

**cum (quum)**, conj., *when, since, although*.

**cupidē**, adv., *eagerly*.

**cupiditās**, -ātis, f., *eager desire, longing, cupidity*.

**cupidus**, -a, -um, *desirous of, eager for*.

**cupiō**, -ere, -īvī (ii), -ītum, *desire, favor*.

**cūrō** (1), *care for*; (with object and gerundive), *have*.

**custōs**, -ōdis, m., f., *guard, sentinel*.

## D

**damnō** (1), *condemn*.

**dē**, prep. with abl., *down from, from, for, concerning*.

**dēbeō**, **dēbēre**, **dēbuī**, **dēbitum** [**dē** + **habeō**] (2), *owe*; pass., *be due*; followed by infin., *ought, must, should*.

**decem**, indecl. num., *ten*.

**dēcipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *entrap, deceive*.

**decuriō**, -ōnis, m. (the leader of a squad of ten cavalry), *a decurion*.

**dēdīticīus**, -i [dēdītus, from **dēdō**], adj., *that has surrendered, subject*. As subst., **dēdīticīl, -ōrum**, m, pl., *prisoners of war, captives*.

**dēdītiō**, -ōnis [dēdō] f., *surrender, accipere or recipere in dēdītiōnem, to receive by capitulation*. in **dēdītiōnem venire**, *to surrender*.

**dēfendō**, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsum, *keep or ward off, defend*.

**dēfessus**, -a, -um (perf. part. of **dēfetiscor**), *wearied, exhausted*.

**dēiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw or cast down, dislodge*.

**deinde**, adv., *then (of consequence or sequence)*.

**dēliberō** (1), *ponder, deliberate*.

**dēligō**, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum [**legō**, *choose*], *pick out, select*.

**dēminuō**, -minuere, -minūī, -minūtūm [*minus*], *lessen, diminish*.

**dēmōnstrō** (1), *show plainly, point out*.

**dēmūm**, adv., *at length*.

**dēnique**, adv., *at length, lastly*.

**dēpōnō**, -pōnere, -posūī, -positum, *place or lay aside*.

**dēpopulor** (1), *ravage, lay waste*.

**dēprecātor**, -ōris, m., *mediator*.

**dēsignō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [dē + signō, mark] (1), *mark out, point out, mean, designate.* i. 18.  
**dēsistō**, -sistere, -stitti, -stitum [dē + sistō] (3), *stand off from; leave off, cease, desist from, stop, give up.* **dēsistere sententiā**, *to give up the notion.*  
**dēspērō** (1) [spēs, hope], *be hopeless, despair.*  
**dēspiciō**, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, *look down on, despise.*  
**dēstituō**, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum [statuō], *set aside, forsake, abandon.*  
**dēstringō**, -stringere, -strinxī, *strictum [stringō, draw], draw off, unsheathe, draw.*  
**dēterreō** (2), *frighten off, deter, discourage.*  
**deus**, -ī, m., *god.*  
**dexter**, -tera, -terum, and -tra, -trum, comp. *dexterior, sup. dextimus, adj., right.*  
**dextra**, -ae [dexter, sc. manus], f., *right hand.* i. 20.  
**dicō**, dicere, dixi, dictum, *say, tell, speak.*  
**dictiō**, -ōnis, f., *a speaking, pleading.*  
**diēs**, diēi, m. and f., *day; time* (i. 7). *multō diēs, late in the day* (i. 22). *in diēs, day by day, every day.* *diem ex diēs, day after day.* (i. 16).  
**differō**, differre, distulī, dīlātum, *carry or bear apart, differ, defer.*

**dīffīcīlis**, -e [dis + facilis], *not easy, difficult.*  
**dīmittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *send apart, dismiss.*  
**dīscēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus [dis- + cēdō] (3), *go apart, disperse, scatter; depart, withdraw, leave, go away, go off. ab armis discēdere, to lay down one's arms.*  
**dīscō**, discere, didicī, *learn.*  
**dīscīdō** (disjīcīdō), -icere, -īcīl, -īctum [dis- + iaciō] (3), *drive asunder; disperse, scatter, rout* (i. 25; iii. 20).  
**dīspōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *place apart, arrange.*  
**dītīssīmūs**, -a, -um (sup. of dīves), *richest.*  
**dīū**, adv., *for a long time.*  
**dīturnus**, -a, -um [dīū], *of long duration, long.*  
**Dīvītīācūs**, -ī, m., *an Aēduan chief.*  
**Dīvīcō**, -ōnis, m., *a Helvetian chief.*  
**dīvidō**, -videre, -visi, -visum, *divide, separate.*  
**dō**, dare, dedi, datum, *give.*  
**doleō** (2), *suffer pain, grieve.*  
**dolor**, -ōris, m., *pain, grief.*  
**dolus**, -ī, m., *treachery, deceit.*  
**domus**, -ūs, *house, home. domī, at home.*  
**dubitātīō**, -ōnis, f., *hesitation.*  
**dubitō** (1), *doubt, hesitate.*  
**dubius**, -a, -um, *doubtful.*

ducenti, -ae, -a [duo + centum], *two hundred.*  
 dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, *lead, draw, consider.*  
 dum, conj., *while, until.*  
**Dumnorix**, -igis [Kel., = 'Great King'], m., an Æduan, brother of Divitiacus, and son-in-law of Orgetorix; a bitter enemy of Caesar, and apparently leader of the Æduan anti-Roman party, until slain by Cæsar's orders while trying to escape from him, B.C. 54. i. 3, 9, 18, 19, 20.  
**duo**, duae, duo, *two.*  
**duodecim** [decem], indecl. num., *twelve.*  
**dux**, ducis [dūcō], m., f., *leader, guide.*

## E

ē, ex, prep. with abl., *from, out of.*  
 ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead forth, draw out.*  
**effēminō** (1), *weaken, enervate.*  
**efferō**, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *bear away or out, lift up, elate.*  
**ego** (dat. mihi, acc. mē), *I.*  
**ēgređior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, *go out, march forth.*  
**ēgregius**, -a, -um [ex + grex, *herd, crowd*], adj., *eminent, marked, distinguished, excellent.*  
**emō**, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, *buy.*

ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *send forth, discharge.*  
 enim, conj., *for.*  
**ēnūntiō** (1), *tell out, reveal, report.*  
 ēō, ire, īvī (ii), itum, *go.*  
 ēō, adv., *to that place, thither.*  
 ēōdem, adv., *to the same place.*  
**eques**, equitis, *rider, horseman, knight; (in pl.) cavalry.*  
**equester**, -tris, -tre [eques], *belonging to a horseman, cavalry, equestrian.*  
**equitātus**, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*  
**equus**, -ī, m., *horse.*  
**ēripō**, -ripere, -ripūi, -reptum [rapiō], *snatch away, rescue.*  
 sō ēripere, *to escape.*  
**et**, conj., *and.* et . . . et, *both . . . and.*  
**etiam** [et + iam], conj., *also; even.* nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also.*  
**ēvellō**, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum, *pull or tear out.*  
**ex**, see ē.  
**exemplum**, -ī, n., *example.*  
**exeō**, -ire, -īvī (ii), -itum, *go out.*  
**exercitus**, -ūs [exerceō, *exercise*], *an exercised, trained body; an army.*  
**existimātiō**, -ōnis, f., *opinion.*  
**existimō** (1), *reckon, think.*  
**expediō**, pedire, -pedīvī, -pedītum [ex + pēs] (4), *disengage, set free; get ready, make ready.*  
**expeditus**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus [part. of expeditus]

diō], adj., *unincumbered, light-armed*; *ready, easy.* legiōnēs *expeditae, legions without baggage.* As subst., *expeditus, -i, m., light-armed soldier.*  
 expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum [ex + pellō] (3), *drive out, drive away, remove, expel.*  
 explōrātor, -ōris, m. [explōrō, *investigate*], *scout, spy.*  
 expūgnō (1), *take by storm, overpower.*  
 exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *follow out or up, enforce.*  
 exspectō (1), *look out, await, expect.*  
 extrā, adv. and prep. with acc., *without, beyond.*  
 extrēmus, -a, -um (sup. from ext-), *outermost, furthest, extreme.*  
 exūrō, -ūrere, -ūssi, -ūstum, *burn up.*

## F

facile, used as adv., *easily.*  
 facilis, -e, *easy.*  
 faciō, facere, fēci, factum, *make, do.*  
 facultās, -ātis, f. [faciō], *means or opportunity of doing, opportunity, means.*  
 famēs, -is, f., *hunger, want.*  
 familia, -ae, f., *slaves of a household, household, retinue.*  
 familiāris, -e [familia], *belonging to the household, private; (as*

subst.) friend. rēs familiāris, *private property.*  
 faveō, favēre, fāvi, *fatum, favor.*  
 ferē, adv., *almost.*  
 ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, *bear, carry, bring, inflict.*  
 ferrum, -i, n., *iron.*  
 fidēs, -eī, f., *confidence, faith, assurance of good faith, protection.*  
 filia, -ae, f., *daughter.*  
 filius, -i, m., *son.*  
 finis, -is, m., *end, limit, boundary;* (in pl.) *territory, confines.*  
 finitimus, -a, -um [finis], *bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring;* (as subst.) *neighbors.*  
 fīō, fierī, factus sum, *be made or done, happen (used as pass. of faciō).*  
 firmus, -a, -um, *strong, firm.*  
 flāgitō (1), *demand.*  
 flēō, flēre, flēvi, flētum, *weep.*  
 flūmen, -i inis, n. [fluō], *a flowing stream, river.*  
 fluō, fluere, flūxi, fluxum, *flow.*  
 fortis, -e, *strong, brave.*  
 fortiter, adv., *bravely.*  
 fortitūdō, -inis, f. [fortis], *bravery.*  
 fortūna, -ae, f., *chance, fortune.*  
 fossa, -ae, f. [fodiō, *dig*], *ditch, trench.*  
 frāter, frātris, m., *brother.*  
 frāternus, -a, -um, *pertaining to a brother, brotherly, fraternal.*  
 frīgus, frīgoris, n., *cold, cold weather; pl., seasons of cold, cold spells.*

frūctus, -ūs, m., *crops, fruit.*  
 frūmentārius, -a, -um [frūmentum], *abounding in grain, fruitful.*  
 frūmentum, -i, n., *grain.*  
 fuga, -ae, f. [fugiō, *flee*], *flight.*  
 fugitivus, -i, m., *runaway slave.*

## G

Gabinius, -i, m., a Roman name.  
 Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul.*  
 Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic.*  
 Gallus, -i, m., a *Gaul.*  
 Garumna, -ae, m., *the Garonne* (a river of Gaul).  
 Genāva, -ae, f., *Geneva.*  
 Germāni, -ōrum, m., *the Germans.*  
 gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, *carry on, wage, do.*  
 gladius, -i, m., *sword.*  
 glōria, -ae, f., *glory.*  
 glōrior (1), *glory, boast.*  
 Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek, Grecian.*  
 Grāioceli, -ōrum, m., *the Graio-celi.*  
 grātia, -ae, f., *favor, popularity.*  
 graviter, adv. [gravis], *heavily, severely. graviter ferre, be annoyed or vexed.*

## H

habeō (2), *have, hold.*  
 Helvētia, -ae, f., *Helvetia* (now Switzerland).

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., *of the Helvetii, Helvetian.* civitās Helvētia, *the State of the Helvetii, Helvetian State, divided into four cantons, the names of two of which, pāgus Tigrinus, pāgus Verbigenus, are known (i. 12).* As subst., Helvēti, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Helvetians, Helvetii* (i. 1-29, 30, 31, 40).

hiberna, -ōrum, n., *winter quarters.*

hic, haec, hōc, *this.*

hiemō (1), [hiems, *winter*], *pass the winter.*

Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain.*

homō, -inis, m. f., *a human being, man.*

honor, -ōris, m., *honor, distinction, office.*

hōra, -ae, f., *hour.*

hortor (1), *arouse, urge.*

hostis, -is, m. f., *stranger, (public) enemy; (in pl.) the enemy.*

hūmānitās, -ātis, f., *refinement.*

## I (vowel)

ibi, adv., *in that place, there.*

ictus, -ūs, m., *stroke, blow.*

idem, eadem, idem, *the same.*

Idūs, -ōrum, f. pl., *the Ides, the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October; the thirteenth day of other months.*  
 i. 7.

**ignis**, -is, m., *fire*.

**ignōrō** (1), [in, neg. + *gnārus*, *knowing*], *not know, be ignorant*.

**ille**, *illa*, *illud*, *that* (used of what is remote).

**illīc** [ille], *adv.*, *there*.

**immortālis**, -e, *immortal*.

**impedimentum**, -i, n., *hindrance*; (in pl.) *heavy baggage, baggage-train*.

**impediō** (4), *obstruct, hamper*.

**impendeō**, -ēre [*pendeō, hang*], *overhang, impend*.

**imperium**, -i, n., *a command, right of command, supreme power*.

**imperō** (1), *command, enjoin, make requisition for*.

**impetrō** (1), *obtain by entreaty, accomplish*.

**impetus**, -ūs, m. [*peto*], *attack, assault*.

**importō** (1), *bring in, import*.

**improbus**, -a, -um, *base, wicked*.

**imprōvisō**, *adv.* [*prō* + *visus*, *seen*], *unawares, unexpectedly*.

**impūne**, *adv.* [in + *poena, punishment*], *without punishment, with impunity*.

**impūnitās**, -ātis, f., *freedom from punishment, impunity*.

**in**, *prep.* with *acc.* (of motion), *into, to, against*; with *abl.* (of rest), *in, on, over*.

**in-**, *inseparable prefix = un-, not, as in *insuditus, unheard*.*

**incendō**, -cendere, -cendi, -cēn-  
sum, *set fire to*.

**incitō** (1) [*citō, urge*], *urge on, incite*.

**incolō**, -colere, -colui, -cultum  
[*colō, cultivate*], *dwell in, inhabit*.

**incommōdum**, -i, n. [*commodus, convenient*], *an inconvenience, disadvantage, disaster*.

**incrēibilis**, -e [*crēdō, believe*], *incredible*.

**inde**, *adv.*, *from that place, thence*.  
**indictum**, -i, n., *information, evidence*.

**indūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead in or into, lead on, induce*.

**inferior**, -iūs [*inferus*], *lower (in place); later (in time)*.

**inferō**, *inferre, intuli, illātum, bring into or upon, wage upon, attack*.

**inflectō**, -flectere, -flexi, -flexum, *bend in, curve*.

**inflūo**, -fluere, -flūxi, -fluxum, *flow into, flow*.

**inimicus**, -a, -um, *comp. -iōr, sup. -issimus* [*in-* + *amicus*], *adj., unfriendly, hostile*. As *subst.*, **inimicus**, -i, m., *enemy, personal enemy*, as distinguished from *hostis*, *a public enemy*.

**initiō**, -i, n. [in + *eō*], *beginning*.

**iniūria**, -ae, f. [*iūs, right*], *wrong, injustice*.

**iniussū**, m. (abl. of assumed in-iussus), *without command*.

**inopia**, -ae, f., *need, lack*.

**inopināns**, -antis, *unawares*.

**insciēns**, -entis [sciō, *know*], *not knowing, unaware*.

**Insequor**, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue*.

**insidiae**, -ārum, f., *ambuscade, treachery*.

**insignis**, -e, *remarkable*; (as subst.) n., *sign, decoration*.

**insolenter**, adv., *insultingly*.

**instituō**, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, *set up, establish*.

**Institütum**, -i, n., *an established course, custom, institution*.

**instō**, -stāre, -stitti, -stātum, *stand upon or near, approach, attack*.

**instruō**, -struere, -strūxi, -strūctum, *build, draw up*.

**intellegō** (-ligō), -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *learn, understand*.

**inter**, prep. with acc., *between, among*.

**intercedō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *go between, interpose, intercede*.

**interclūdō**, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum, *shut off*.

**interdiū**, adv., *during the day, by day*.

**interdum**, adv., *between whiles, sometimes*.

**interēā**, adv., *meanwhile*.

**interficiō**, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, *kill*.

**interim**, adv., *meanwhile*.

**intermittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *leave or break off, interrupt*.

**interneciō**, -ōnis, f., *extermination, massacre*.

**interpres**, -etis, m. f., *interpreter*.

**intersum**, -esse, -fui, *be between, intervene*.

**intervallum**, -i, n., *interval*.

**invitus**, -a, -um, *unwilling*.

**ipse**, ipsa, ipsum, dem. pron., *self, himself, herself, etc.*

**is**, ea, id, dem. pron., *this, that, he, she, it, unemphatic*.

**ita**, adv., *so, thus*.

**Italia**, -ae, f., *Italy*.

**itaque**, conj., *and so, therefore*.

**item**, adv., *in like manner, likewise, so also*.

**iter**, itineris [cf. eō, ire], n., *journey, line of march, march; road, route. māgnum iter, forced march, from 20 to 25 miles a day*.

### I (consonant)

**iactō** (i), *toss, discuss*.

**iam**, adv., *now, already, at length*.

**iubēō**, iubēre, iussi, iussum, *order*.

**iūdiciū** (jūdiciū), -i [iūdex, *judge*]. n., *legal judgment, decision, decree; place of judgment, trial (i. 4); opinion, judgment*.

**iūdicō** (i), *judge*.

**iugum**, -i, n., *yoke, ridge*.

**iūmentum**, -i, n., *yoke or draught animal, beast of burden.*

**iungō**, *iungere*, iūnxī, iūnctum, *join.*

**Iūra**, -ae, m., *the mountain range running from the Rhine to the Rhope.*

**iūs**, iūrō, n., *right, justice, law.*  
**iūsiūrandum**, iūrisiūrandī, n., *oath.*

**iūstitia**, -ae, f., *justice.*

**iuvō**, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *help, aid.*  
*iuvat* (impers.), *it pleases.*

## K

**Kalendae (Calendae)**, -ārum, f., *the Calends (the first day of a month).*

## L

**L.**, see **Lūcius.**

**Lābiēnus**, -i, m., *Titus Labienus*, Cæsar's chief lieutenant-general, afterwards deserted to Pompey, and fell B.C. 45 at Munda.

**lacessō**, -ere, -ivi, -itum [obsolete  
laciō, entice] (3), *arouse, provoke, annoy, assail, attack.*

**lacrima**, -ae, f., *tear.*

**lacus**, -üs, m., *lake.*

**largior**, largīrī, largītus [largus, abundant] (4), dep., *give freely, impart, bestow, bribe* (i. 18).

**largiter** [largus, abundant], adv., *abundantly, much.* largiter

**posse**, *to have great influence* (i. 18).

**largītō**, -ōnis [largior], f., *lavish giving, bribery.* i. 9.

**lātē**, adv. [lātus], *broadly, widely.*

**lātitūdō**, -inis, f. [lātus], *width.*

**lātiūs**, see **lātē.**

**Latobrigī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *a tribe about the head-waters of the Danube, bordering on the Tulingi.* i. 5, 28, 29.

**lātrō**, -ōnis, m., *freebooter, robber.*

**lātūrus**, see **ferō.**

**lātūs**, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *broad, wide; of territory, extensive.*

**lātūs**, -eris, n., *side; of an army, flank.* latus apertum, *exposed flank.* ab latere, *on the flank.*

**lēgātiō**, -ōnis, f., *embassy.*

**lēgātūs**, -i, m., *ambassador, lieutenant.*

**legiō**, -ōnis, f., *legion.*

**Lēmanus**, -i, m., in Cæsar always with lacus, *Lake Geneva.*

**lēnitās**, -ātis, f., *smoothness, gentleness.*

**lēx**, lēgis, f., *law.*

**liberālītās**, -ātis, f., *generosity, liberality.*

**liberē**, adv., *freely.*

**liberī**, -ōrum, m., *children.*

**libertās**, -ātis, f., *freedom, liberty.*

**liceor** (2), *bid (at an auction).*

**licet**, licēre, licuit, impers., *it is permitted.*

**Lingonēs**, -um, m., *the Lingones.*

lingua, -ae, f., tongue, *language*.  
 linter, -tris, f., boat, *skiff*. i. 12.  
**Liscus**, -i, m., chief magistrate  
 (vergobret) of the *Aedui*, B.C.  
 58. i. 16, 17, 18.  
**littera** (*litera*), -ae, f., *a letter of the alphabet*; (in. pl.) *a letter*.  
**locus**, -i, m. (in pl., n.), *place*.  
**longē**, adv. [*longus, long*], *far, by far*.  
**longitūdō**, -inis, f. [*longus*], *length*.  
**loquor**, *loqui*, *locūtus sum, speak*.  
**Lūcius**, -i (abbr. L.), a Roman name.  
**lūx**, *lūcis*, f., *light*.

## M

**M.**, see **Mārcus**.  
**magis**, comp. adv. (sup. *māximē*), *more, rather*.  
**magistrātus**, -ūs, m., *magistracy, magistrate*.  
**māgnopere**, adv., *greatly, especially*.  
**māgnus**, -a, -um (comp. *māior*, sup. *māximus*), *great, large*.  
**maleficium**, -i, n., *mischief, wickedness*.  
**mandō** (1), *entrust, order*.  
**manus**, -ūs, f., *hand, armed force*.  
**Mārcus**, -i, m., a Roman name.  
**matara**, -ae, f., *a Gallic javelin*.  
**māter**, *mātris*, f., *mother, matron*.  
**mātrimōnium**, -i [*māter*], n., *marriage. in mātrimōnium*

dare, *to give in marriage* (i. 3).  
 in *mātrimōnium dūcere, to marry* (i. 9).  
**Matrona**, -ae, f., *Marne*, which rises near the head-waters of the Meuse (Mosa) and flows to the northwest, joining the Seine (Sequana) four miles above Paris, after a course of more than two hundred miles. i. 1.  
**mātūrō** (1), *ripen, hasten*.  
**mātūrus**, -a, -um, *ripe, complete, early*.  
**māximē**, sup. adv. [*māgnus*], *very greatly, most, especially*.  
**māximus**, see *māgnus*.  
**mē** (acc. of *ego*), *me*.  
**medius**, -a, -um, *in the middle of*.  
**memoria**, -ae, f., *recollection, memory*.  
**mēnsis**, -is, m., *month*.  
**mercātor**, -ōris, m., *merchant*.  
**meror** (2), *deserve, earn, merit*.  
**meritum**, -i, n., *desert, merit*.  
**Messāla**, -ae, m., *Marcus Valesius Messala*, consul B.C. 61. i. 2, 35.  
**mētior**, *mētiri*, *mēnsus sum, measure*.  
**mihi** (dat. of *ego*), *me, to me*.  
**miles**, -itis, m., *soldier*.  
**militāris**, -e, *pertaining to a soldier, military*.  
**mille**, indecl. adj., *a thousand*. As subst., **milia**, -um, n. pl., *thousand, thousands*.

**minimē**, adv., *least, by no means.*  
**minimus**, -a, -um (sup. of *parvus*, *small*), *least, very little.*  
**minor** (comp. of *parvus*), *smaller, less.*  
**minuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [minus], *make smaller, lessen.*  
**minus**, adv. [minor], *less.*  
**mittō**, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send.*  
**modo**, adv., *only*; see *etiam*.  
**molō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum (3), *grind.*  
*molita cibāria, meal, coarse flour.*  
**moneō** (2), *advise, remind, warn, admonish.*  
**mōns**, montis, m., *mountain.*  
**mōrī**, morī, mortuus sum, *die.*  
**mōrōr** (1), *tarry, delay.*  
**mōrīs**, mortis, f. [mōrīor], *death.*  
**mōs**, mōris, m., *manner, custom; (in pl.) customs, character.*  
**moveō**, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move.*  
**mulier**, mulieris, f., *woman.*  
**multitūdō**, -inis, f. [multus], *great number, multitude.*  
**multō** or **multum**, comp. plūs, sup. plūrimum [multus], adv., *much, by far, greatly. multum posse or valēre, to have great power, influence.*  
**multum**, adv., see *multō*.  
**multus**, -a, -um, adj., comp. plūs, sup. plūrimus, *much; pl. many.* As subst., m. pl., *multi*, -ōrum, *many people; plūrēs,*

*-ium, more, quite a number, several; neut. sing., multum, much; plūs, more; plūrimum, very much: neut. pl., multa, many things, many considerations. multō diē, late in the day, when the day was far spent (i. 22).*  
**mūniō** (4) [moenia, walls], *build a wall, fortify.*  
**mūniōtō**, -ōnis, f., *fortification.*  
**mūrus**, -i, m., *wall.*

## N

**nam**, conj., *for.*  
**Nammēiūs**, -ī, m., a Helvetician chief.  
**nātūra**, -ae, f., *nature, character.*  
**nāvis**, -is, f., *ship.*  
**nē**, conj., *not to, that . . . not, lest; (after words of fearing) that.*  
**-ne**, enclitic interrog. particle.  
**nec**, see *neque.*  
**necessāriō**, adv., *necessarily, unavoidable.*  
**necessāriūs**, -a, -um, *necessar-*; (as subst.) m., *kinsman.*  
**negō** (1), *say not, deny.*  
**nēmō**, -inis, m. f., *no one.*  
**neque** (nec), conj., *and not, and also; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.*  
**nervus**, -ī, m., *sinew, tendon; (in pl.) power, strength.*  
**nēve** (neu), adv., *and not, nor.*  
**nex**, necis, f., *death.*

nihil (nihilum), indecl. noun, *nothing.*

nisi, conj., *if not, unless.*

nitor, niti, nitus or nixus sum, *rest upon, rely upon, strive.*

nōbilis, -e [nōscō, know], *famous, high-born, noble.*

nōbilitās, -atis, f., *nobility, nobles.*

noctū, adv. [nox], *by night.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, *not wish, be unwilling.*

nōmen, -inis, n., *name.*

nōminātīm, adv., *by name.*

nōn, adv., *not.*

nōnāgintā, *ninety.*

nōndum, adv., *not yet.*

nōnnūllus, -a, -um (*not none*) *some; (in pl. as subst.) some, several.*

nōnnumquam (*not never*), *sometimes.*

Nōrēia, -ae, f., *Noreia (a town of the Norici).*

Nōricus, -a, -um, *of the Norici, Norican.*

nōs (nom. and acc. pl. of ego), *we, us.*

nōster, -tra, -trum [nōs], *our, ours.*

novem, *nine.*

novus, -a, -um, *new; novae rēs, new state of affairs, revolution.*

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, *veil one's self (for marriage), marry.*

nūdus, -a, -um, *naked, exposed, unprotected.*

nūllus, -a, -um [nē + üllus, *any*], *not any, no, none.*

num, interrog. particle implying a negative answer.

numerus, -i, m., *number.*

nūntiō (1), *report, announce.*

nūntiūm, -i, n., *report, message.*

nūntius, -i, m., *one who reports, messenger.*

nūper, *recently.*

## 0

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of; (in composition) to, against.*

obaerātūs, -i, m., *one involved in debt, debtor.*

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw in front, oppose.*

oblīviscor, oblīvisci, oblītus sum, *forget.*

obsecrō (1), *beseech, implore.*

obses, -idis, m. f., *hostage.*

obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, *strictum, bind.*

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold, possess.*

occāsus, -ūs, m., *falling, setting.*

occidō, -cidere. -cidi, -cīsum [caedō, cut], *cut off, kill, slay.*

occultō (1), *hide, conceal.*

occupō (1) [capiō], *take possession of, seize, occupy.*

Ōceanus, -i, m., *ocean.*

Ocelum, -i, n., *a city of Gallia Cisalpina.*

octō, *eight.*

octōdecim, eighteen.

octōgintā, eighty.

oculus, -i, m., eye.

ōdi, ōdisse, def. verb, hate.

offendō, -fendere, fendi, fēnum, strike against, stumble, offend.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, f., a striking against, offence.

omnīnō, adv. [omnis], altogether, in all.

omnis, -e, all, every.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, impers. verb, it is necessary, one ought.

oppidum, -i, n., stronghold, town.

oppūgnō (1), fight against, storm.

ops, opis (not used in nom. sing.), power, strength; (in pl.) resources, means.

opus, -eris, n., work.

ōratiō, -ōnis [ōrō], f., speech, words, address, plea.

Orgetorix, -igis, m. [Kel. = 'The King who slays,' 'All-slaughtering King'], a Helvetian lord who formed a plot to seize the supreme power, but was apprehended and died, or committed suicide, before judgment was pronounced. i. 2, 3, 4, 5, 9, 26.

oriēns, -entis [part. of orior], adj., rising. orientem sōlem, the rising sun = the east (i. 1).

orior, orīnī, ortus (4), dep., rise, arise; begin, spring from; start from.

ōrō (1), speak, plead, entreat. ōstendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum

[ob + tendō, stretch], expose to view, exhibit.

P

pābulatiō, -ōnis, f., foraging.

pābulum, -i, n., food, fodder.

pācō (1) [pax], pacify, subdue.

paene, adv., almost.

pāgus, -i, m., canton, district.

pār, paris, equal.

parātus, -a, -um [p. p. of parō], prepared, ready.

pāreō (2), obey.

pārō (1), prepare, provide.

pars, partis, f., part, direction.

parvus, -a, -um (comp. minor, sup. minimus), small, little.

passus, -ūs, m., step, pace (five Roman feet). milia passuum, miles.

pateō, -ēre, -uī, lie open, extend.

pater, patris, m., father.

patiō, pati, passus sum, suffer, permit.

pauci, -ae, -a, few.

pāx, pācis, f., peace.

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, drive, beat.

per, prep. with acc., through, by means of.

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead through.

perfacilis, -e, very easy.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum [faciō], do thoroughly, accomplish, complete.

**perfringō**, -fringere, -frēgi, -frāctum, *break through*.

**perfuga**, -ae, m., *deserter*.

**perfugiō**, -fugere, -fūgi, *flee, desert*.

**periculum**, -i, n., *danger, risk*.

**peritus**, -a, -um, *experienced, practised, skilled*.

**permovereō**, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum [per + moveō] (2), *deeply move, greatly disturb, alarm; influence, induce*.

**perniciēs**, -ēi, f., *destruction*.

**perpaucus**, -a, -um, *very little, very few*.

**perrumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpi, -rūptum, *break through*.

**persequor**, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *follow after, pursue*.

**persevērō** (1), *continue, persist*.

**persolvō**, -solvere, -solvi, -solūtum, *pay in full*.

**persuādeō**, -suādere, -suāsī, -suāsum, *convince, persuade*.

**perterreō** (2), *frighten thoroughly*.

**pertineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, — [per + teneō] (2), *reach out, extend; pertain to, concern, belong to, have to do with*.

**perveniō**, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *come through, arrive*.

**pēs**, *pedis, m., foot*.

**petō**, -ere, -ivi (-ii), -itum, *attack, aim at, seek*.

**phalanx**, -angis, *Greek acc. sing phalanga [φάλαγξ]. f., compact host, mass, phalanx*.

**pīlum**, i, n., a heavy *spear* (with shaft about 4 feet long) thrown by Roman legionaries.

**Pīsō**, -ōnis, m., name of persons mentioned in the Gallic War:

1. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus*, consul B.C. 112; killed B.C. 107, when serving as lieutenant in Gaul with the consul *Lucius Cassius Longinus*. i. 12.

2. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus*, consul with *Aulus Gabinius*, B.C. 58, and father-in-law of Cæsar. i. 6, 12.

3. *Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus*, consul with *M. Valerius Messala*, B.C. 61. i. 2, 35.

**plēbs**, *plēbis* (plēbēs, -ēi), f., *common people, plebeians*.

**plūrimus**, -a, -um (sup. of multus), *very much, most, very many*.

**plūs**, *plūris* (comp. of multus), *more*.

**poena**, -ae, f., *punishment, penalty*.

**polliceor** (2), *promise*.

**pōnō**, *pōnere, posui, positum, put, place*.

**pōns**, *pontis, m., bridge*.

**populātiō**, -ōnis, f., *ravaging*.

**populor** (1), *devastate*.

**populus**, -i, m., *people*.

**portō** (1), *carry, bring*.

**portōrium**, -i, n., *tax, tariff*.

**poscō**, -ere, *poposcī, demand.*  
**possessiō**, -ōnis, f., *possession.*  
**possum**, *posse, potuī* [potis, able + sum], *be able, can.*  
**post**, prep. with acc., *behind, after.*  
**posteā**, adv., *afterwards.*  
**posterus**, -a, -um, *following.*  
**postquam**, conj., *after, as soon as.*  
**postrīdiē**, adv., *on the day after.*  
**potēns**, -entis, *powerful.*  
**potentia**, -ae, f., *power, ability.*  
**potestās**, -ātis, f., *power.*  
**potior**, *potiri, potitus sum, get or obtain possession of.*  
**prae**, prep. with abl., *before; (in composition) before, over, very.*  
**praecēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *go before, surpass, precede.*  
**praecipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *take in advance, order, instruct.*  
**praeferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *bear before, choose, prefer.*  
**praeficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *set before or over, place in command.*  
**praemittō**, -mittere, -misi, -misum, *send before or in advance.*  
**praeoptō** (1), *choose rather, prefer.*  
**praesentia**, -ae, f., *the present moment.*  
**praesertim**, adv., *especially.*  
**praesidium**, -i, n., *protection, guard, garrison.*  
**praestō**, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum [prae + stō] (1), *excel, surpass; ex-*

*hibit, manifest, show; discharge, perform.* Impers. **praestat**, *it is preferable, it is better.* officium **praestāre**, *to do one's duty.*  
**praestō**, adv., *at hand.* **praestō esse, to meet.**  
**praesum**, -esse, -fūi, — [prae + sum], irr., *be or preside over, be at the head of, have command of, have charge of.*  
**praeter**, prep. with acc., *past, by, beyond, except.*  
**praetereō**, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itum, *go by or beyond; (p. p. as subst.)* **praeterita**, -ōrum, n., *the past.*  
**praetor**, -ōris [praetor, from **praeō**], m., *general, commander* (i. 21); **praetor**, a Roman magistrate, next to the consul in rank, charged with judicial functions.  
**prēndō** (prehēdō), *prēndere, prēndi, prēnsum, lay hold of, grasp.*  
**pretium**, -ī, n., *price.*  
**prex**, *precis, f., prayer.*  
**prīdiē**, adv., *on the day before.*  
**prīmum**, adv., *in the first place, first.*  
**prīmus**, -a, -um, sup. adj., *first.*  
**prīnceps**, -ipis, *chief; (as subst.) chief, leader.*  
**prīncipātus**, -ūs, m., *leadership, chief position, preēminence.*  
**prīstinus**, -a, -um, *former.*  
**prius**, comp. adv., *sooner.*

**priusquam**, *adv.*, *before, sooner than.*  
**privātim**, *adv.*, *privately, as private citizens.* [nāl.  
**privātus**, *-a, -um, private, personal.*  
**prō**, *prep. with abl., before, for, in behalf of, in proportion to.*  
**probō** (1), *try, prove, approve.*  
**Procillus**, *-i, m., Gaius Valerius Procillus* (a Gallic chief).  
**prōdō**, *-dere, -didi, -ditum* [dō], *transmit, hand down.*  
**proelium**, *-i, n., battle.*  
**profectiō**, *-ōnis, f., setting out, departure.*  
**proficiscor**, *proficisci, profectus sum, set out, depart.*  
**prohibeō** (2), *keep from, prohibit, prevent.*  
**prōiciō**, *-icere, -iēci, -iectum, throw forth, cast down.*  
**prope**, *adv. and prep. with acc., near.*  
**propinquus**, *-a, -um, near, neighboring; (as subst.) relative, kinsman.*  
**prōpōnō**, *-pōnere, -posui, -positum, place or set forth, declare.*  
**propter**, *prep. with acc., on account of.*  
**proptereā**, *adv., for this reason.*  
**prōspiciō**, *-spicere, -spexi, -spectum, look forward, look out for.*  
**prōvincia**, *-ae, f., province, subject territory; in Cæsar often the Province, the part of Transalpine Gaul subdued by the*

*Romans before B.C. 58, lying between the Mediterranean sea and the upper part of the Rhone, the Cévennes mountains, and the upper part of the Garonne river.*

**proximē**, *adv. [prope], next, nearest, last.*

**proximus**, *-a, -um, nearest, last.*

**pūblicē** [pūblicus], *adv., in the name of the state, as a state, publicly, opposed in meaning to prfātim.*

**pūblicus**, *-a, -um, public.*

**Pūblius**, *-i (abbr. P.), m., a Roman name.*

**puer**, *-i, m., boy, child.*

**pūgna**, *-ae, f., fight, battle.*

**pūgnō** (1), *fight.*

**pūrgō** (1), *clear, acquit.*

**putō** (1), *compute, reckon, think.*

**Pyrēnaeus**, *-a, -um* [?], *adj., only with montes, the Pyrenees mountains, between France and Spain.*

## Q

**quā**, *adv., by which way, where.*

**quadrāgintā**, *forty.*

**quadrīngentī**, *-ae, -a, four hundred.*

**quaerō**, *quaerere, quæsīvī, quæsitum, seek, ask.*

**quālis**, *-e, of what sort.*

**quam**, *adv. and conj., how, as, than; (with sup.) as possible.*

**quantus**, *-a, -um, how great; tan-*

tus . . . quantus, so (or as) great  
 . . . as. [reason.]  
 quā rē, adv., wherefore, for this  
 quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.  
 quattuor, four.  
 -que, enclitic conj., and.  
 queror, querī, questus sum, com-  
     plain.  
 quī, quae, quod, rel. pron. and  
     interrog. adj., who, which, what.  
 quidem, indeed; nē . . . quidem,  
     not even, not either.  
 quin, conj., that, but that, from;  
     quin etiam, nay more.  
 quīndecim, fifteen.  
 quīngentī, -ae, -a, five hundred.  
 quīni, -ae, -a, distrib. num., five  
     each, five.  
 quīnque, five.  
 quīntus, -a, -um, fifth.  
 quis, quid, interrog. pron., who?  
     which? what? (as indef.) any  
     one, any thing.  
 quisquam, quidquam (quic-  
     quam), any one, any thing.  
 quisque, quaeque, quidque,  
     (quodque), each one, every one,  
     each, every.  
 quod, conj., because.  
 quoque, conj., also.  
 quum, see cum.

## R

rapīna, -ae, f., plunder, rapine.  
 ratiō, -ōnis, f., reckoning, plan,  
     reason.

ratis, -is, f., raft.  
 Rauraci, -ōrum, m., the Rauraci.  
 re- (red-), inseparable prefix with  
     the force of back, again.  
 recēns, -ēntis, fresh, recent.  
 recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,  
     take back, receive.  
 redeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go back, re-  
     turn.  
 redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum  
     [emō, buy], buy back, buy up.  
 redintegriō (1), restore, renew.  
 reditiō, -ōnis, f., a going back, re-  
     turn.  
 redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,  
     lead back, withdraw.  
 referō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, bring  
     or carry back, report.  
 rēgnūm, -ī, n. [rēx], sovereignty,  
     royal power.  
 rēcīō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw  
     back.  
 relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lic-  
     tum, leave behind, abandon.  
 reliquus, -a, -um, the rest of, re-  
     maining; (as subst.) remain-  
     der.  
 reminiscor, -ī, call to mind, re-  
     member.  
 removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mō-  
     tum, move back.  
 renūntiō (1), bring back word,  
     report.  
 repellō, repellere, repulī, repul-  
     sum, drive back, repulse.  
 repentinus, -a, -um, sudden, un-  
     expected.

**reperiō**, reperire, repperī, reper-tum, *find out, discover.*

**reprehendō**, -prehendere, -prehēndi, -prehēnsūm, *blame, censure.*

**repūgnō** (1), *fight back, resist.*

**rēs**, *rei*, f., *matter, affair; circumstance, fact, transaction; object, project, business.* **rēs militāris**, *warfare, military science.* **rēs novae**, *a revolution.* **rēs pūblica**, *the state, public business, public interest.* **quā rē**, *wherefore, and for this reason.* **rēs necessāria**, *exigency.*

**rescindō**, -scindere, -scidī, -scis-sum [re- + scindō] (3), *cut down, break up, destroy.*

**resciscō**, -sciscere, -scivī or -scīū, -scitum [re- + sciscō, *inquire*] (3), *discover, find out.* i. 28.

**resistō**, -sistere, -stītī, *stand back, stop, resist.*

**respondeō**, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *answer, reply.*

**responsum**, -ī, n., *reply.*

**rēs pūblica** (*rēspūblica*) *rei pūblicae, f., state.*

**restituō**, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, *set up again, restore.*

**retineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [*teneō*], *hold back, retain.*

**revertō**, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *turn back, return; revertor, -ī, dep., is generally used in the tenses of incomplete action.*

Rhēnus, -i, m., *the Rhine*.  
 Rhodanus, -i, m., *the Rhone*.  
 rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a river).  
 rogō (i), *ask*.  
**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, *Roman*; (as subst.) **Rōmāni**, -ōrum, m., *the Romans*.  
 rota, -ae, f., *wheel*.  
 rūrsus, adv., *again*.

**S**

saepe, adv., *often*.  
 salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety*.  
**Santonēs**, -um, or **Santoni**, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic people on the seacoast north of the Garonne; the name survives in *Saintes* and *Saintonge*. i. 10, 11.  
**sarcinæ**, -ārum [SAR in *sarciō*], f. pl., *baggage*, *packs*, the load that each soldier carried on his back.  
 satis, adv. and adj., *sufficiently*, *enough*, *sufficient*.  
**satisfaciō**, -facere, fēcī, -factum, *do enough*, *satisfy*, *make amends*.  
**scelus**, -eris, n., *crime*.  
**sciō**, *scire*, scīvī, scitum, *know*.  
**scūtum**, -i, n., *shield*.  
**sēcrētō**, adv., *secretly*, *in private*.  
**secundus**, -a, -um, *following*, *favorable*, *second*.  
 sed, conj., *but*.  
**sēdecim** [sex], *sixteen*.

**sēditiōsus**, -a, -um, *sedition*.  
**Segusiāvī**, -ōrum, m., *the Segusiavi*.  
**sēmentis**, -is, f., *sowing, planting*.  
**semper**, adv., *always*.  
**senātus**, -ūs, m., *senate*.  
**senex**, *senis, old*; (as subst.) *old man*.  
**sēni**, -ae, -a, distrib. num., *six each, six*.  
**sentiō**, *sentire, sēnsi, sēnsum, be sensible of, feel, perceive, think*.  
**sēparātīm**, adv., *separately*.  
**septentriōnēs** (*septem, triones*), -um, m. pl., *the seven plough oxen* (the stars of the Great Bear). — Hence, *the north*. — Also (by an error), in the sing., *septentrio*, -ōnis, *the north*; *& septentriōnibus, in the north; sub septentriōnibus, in the north, towards the north*.  
**septimus**, -a, -um, *seventh*.  
**sepultūra**, -ae, f., *burial*.  
**Sēquana**, -ae, m., *the Seine*.  
**Sēquani**, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic state west of the Jura; chief city *Vesontio*, now *Besançon*. In their strifes with the *Aēdui* they secured the aid of *Ariovistus*, who made them subject to himself.  
**sequor**, *sequi, secūtus sum, follow*.  
**servitūs**, -ūtis, f., *slavery*.  
**servus**, -i, m., *slave*.  
**seu**, *see sīve*.  
**sex**, *six*.  
**sexāgintā**, *sixty*.  
**sī**, conj., *if*.  
**signum**, -i, n., *signal, standard*.  
**silva**, -ae, f., *forest*.  
**simul**, adv., *at the same time, at once*.  
**sīn**, conj., *but if*.  
**sine**, prep. with abl., *without*.  
**singuli**, -ae, -a, distrib. num., *one at a time, one by one, single*.  
**sinister**, -tra, -trum, *left*.  
**sīve (seu)**, conj., *or if; sīve . . . sīve, whether . . . or, either . . . or*.  
**socer**, *socerī, m., father-in-law*.  
**socius**, -i, m., *ally*.  
**sōl**, *sōlis, m., the sun*.  
**sōlum**, adv., *only*.  
**solum**, -i, n., *soil, ground*.  
**sōlus**, -a, -um (gen. -iūs, dat. -i), *alone, only*.  
**soror**, -ōris, f., *sister*.  
**spatiūm**, -i, n., *space, period*.  
**spectō (1)**, *look, face*.  
**spērō (1)** [spēs], *hope, look for*.  
**spēs**, -ei, f., *hope*.  
**sponte**, abl. and *spontis*, gen., only forms in use of an obsolete nom. **spōna**, f., *of one's own accord, willingly*. **suā sponte**, *of their own accord, unaided; by their own influence* (i. 9).  
**statuō**, *ere, ui, ūtum, v. a., set up, resolve, deem, decide*. *graviter statuere in aliquem, to*

*take strong measures against.  
nōn expectandum sibi statuit,  
decided that he ought not to wait  
[stō].*

**studeō**, -ēre, -uī, *be eager for, desire.*

**studium**, -i, n., *zeal, earnestness, regard, desire; — in populum Rōmānum, affection for the R. p.*

**sub**, prep. (i.) w. acc., *under* (of motion); — **iugum mittere**, *send under the yoke; — primam nostram aciem successōrunt, came up close to our front line.* (ii.) with abl., *under.*

**subdūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *draw up or away, withdraw.*

**subeō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, *go under or near, undergo.*

**subiciō** (subiiciō), -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [sub + iaciō] (3), *throw from beneath* (i. 26).

**sublevō** (1), *lift up, aid.*

**subsistō**, -sistere, -stī, *stand still, withstand, resist.*

**subsum**, -esse, -fuī, *be under or near.*

**subvehō**, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *carry or bring up, convey.*

**succēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *go under or near, approach, succeed.*

**sui**, sibi, sē or sēsē, nom. wanting, reflex. pron., *himself, herself, itself, themselves, him, her.*

**Sulla**, -ae, m., *Lucius Cornelius*

*Sulla, born B.C. 138; Consul B.C. 88, Dictator, 81-79 B.C.; leader of the aristocratic party in the first of the Civil Wars, and deadly enemy of Marius; died B.C. 78. i. 21.*

**sum**, *esse, fuī, be.*

**summa**, -ae, f., *highest point, sum. summoveō* (sub-), -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtūm, *remove.*

**summus**, -a, -um (pos. superus), *highest.*

**sūmō**, sūmēre, sūmpsī, sūmptūm, *take, claim.*

**sūmptus**, -ūs, m., *expense.*

**super**, adv. and prep. with acc., *above, over.*

**superō** (1), *surpass, conquer.*

**supersum**, -esse, -fuī, *be over, survive.*

**superus**, -a, -um (comp. superior, sup. suprēmus, summus), *uper, high.*

**suppetō**, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum, *be at hand or in store.*

**suppliciter**, adv., *humbly.*

**supplicium**, -i, n., *punishment.*

**suscipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [subs, for sub, + capiō] (3), *undertake, take up; take upon one's self, assume* (i. 3). **bellum suscipere**, *to commence war.*

**suspicio**, -ōnis, f., *mistrust, suspicion.*

**sustineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold up or out, sustain.*

**suus**, -a, -um, *his, her, its, their.*

## T

T., see **Titus**.**tabula**, -ae, f., *board, writing-tablet*.**taceō** (2), *be silent, keep secret*.**tam**, adv., *so*.**tamen**, adv., *nevertheless, yet*.**tandem**, adv., *at length*.**tantus**, -a, -um, *so great*.**tēlum**, -i, n., *dart, missile*.**temperantia**, -ae, f., *self-control, moderation*.**temperō** (1), *control, refrain*.**temptō** (tentō), -āre, -āvī, -ātum [tentō, p. p. of teneō, hold], i. v. a., *handle*. Hence, *try, attempt, make an attempt upon, tempt; iter (try to force)*.**tempus**, -oris [TEM (cut, with root determinative or accidental p) + us], n. (*a cutting*). — Esp., *a division of time, a time, time (in general), a season, an occasion, an emergency, a crisis; tam necessariō tempore, at so critical a moment; omni tempore, at all times, always; in reliquum tempus, for the future; tūd tempore, at once*.**teneō**, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, *hold*.**terra**, -ae, f., *earth*.**tertius**, -a, -um, *third*.**testis**, -is, m. f., *witness*.**Tigurīnus**, -a, -um, *of the Tigurini* (a canton of the Helvetii).**timeō**, -ēre, -ui, *fear*.**timor**, -ōris, m., *fear*.**Titus**, -i (abbr. T.), m., *a Roman name*.**tolerō** (1), *endure, support*.**tollō**, tollere, sustuli, sublātum, *lift up, take away, destroy*.**Tolōsātēs**, -um, m., *the Tolosates*.**tōtūs**, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i), *all, the whole of, entire*.**trādō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *give over, hand down, surrender*.**trādūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead across*.**trāgula**, -ae, f., *a spear, lance of the Gauls and Spaniards, thrown by means of a strap by which it was swung*.**trāho**, -ere, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *draw, drag*.**trāns**, prep. with acc., *across*.**trānseō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, *go across, cross*.**trānsfigō**, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, *thrust through, transfix, pierce*.**trecentī**, -ae, -a, *three hundred*.**trēs**, tria, *three*.**tribuō**, -uere, -ui, -ūtum, *assign, bestow, attribute, ascribe*.**trīdūm**, -i, n., *three days*.**trigintā**, *thirty*.**triplex**, -icis, *threefold, triple*.**Tulingī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *a German tribe north of the Helvetii, across the Rhine*. i. 5, 25, 26, 28, 29.**tum**, adv., *then, thereupon; be-*

sides, moreover. *cum . . . tum, both . . . and, not only . . . but also.*

**tuus**, -a, -um, *thy your.*

**U**

**ubi**, *when, where.*

**ulciscor**, *ulcisci*, *ultus sum, avenge, punish.*

**ullus**, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i), *any.*

**ulterior**, -ius, *comp. adj., farther. finā*, *adv., at the same time, together; esp. finā cum, together with. [abl. f. of finus.]*

**unde**, *adv., from which place, whence.*

**undique (unde)**, *adv., from all parts, on all sides.*

**unus**, -a, um (gen. -ius, dat. -i), *one.*

**urbs**, *urbis, f., city.*

**ut (utī)**, *conj. (with subj.), that, in order that, to; (with indicative) as, when.*

**uter**, -tra, -trum (gen. -ius, dat. -i), *which of two, which.*

**ūtor**, *ūti, ūsus sum, use.*

**uxor**, -ōris, f., *wife.*

**V**

**vacō** (1), *be vacant or unoccupied.*

**vadum**, -i, n., *ford, shoal.*

**vagor** (1), *wander.* [avail.

**valeō** (2), *be strong or powerful,*

**vällum**, -i, n., *palisade, rampart.*

**västō** (1), *lay waste, devastate.*

**vectigal**, -ālis, n., *tax, public revenue.* [vectus (from vaho).]

**vel**, *or . . . vel . . . vel, either . . . or.*

**veniō**, *venire, vēnī, ventum, come.*

**Verbigenus**, -i, m., *a canton of the Helvetii. See Helvētius.*

**verbum**, -i, n., *word.*

**vereor**, -ēri, -itus (2), *dep., fear, be afraid of; dread, be apprehensive.*

**vergō**, -ere, —, — (3), *incline, lie, slope; be situated in a certain direction.*

**vergobretus**, -i [Kel. = 'He that renders judgment,' 'Judge'], m., *vergobret*, *title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.* i. 16.

**veritus**, *see vereor.*

**vērō** [abl. of *vērus*], *adv., in truth, in fact, truly, certainly; but, but indeed, however.*

**Verucloetius**, -i, m., *one of the Helvetii sent as an ambassador to Cæsar.*

**vērus**, -a, -um, *adj., true.*

**Vesontiō**, -ōnis, m., *chief town of the Sequani on the Dubis, now Besançon.*

**vesper**, -eris (and -erī), m., *eve-ning.* [ēsēpos, ēsēpā.]

**vester**, -tra, -trum [vōs], *poss. pron. adj., your, yours.*

**veterānus**, -a, -um, *adj., veteran, experienced; esp. subst. vete-*

**ran**, i.e. a tried soldier opp. to raw recruits. [vetus.]  
**vetus**, -eris, adj., *ancient, old*. [cp. *eros* = *year*.]  
**vexō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. a., *harass, ravage, overrun* (of a country).  
**via**, -ae, f., *way, route*. (See **vexō**.)  
**victor**, -ōris, m., *conqueror*; adj., *victorious*. [vincō.]  
**victōria**, -ae, f., *victory*.  
**vīcus**, -i, m., *village*.  
**videō**, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see*; (in pass.), *be seen, seem*.  
**vigilia**, -ae, f., *wakefulness, watch*; as a division (one-fourth) of the night: dō (prīmā, secundā, tertiā) quartā vigiliā, *about the first, second, etc., watch*; these being respectively 6 P.M.—9 P.M., 9 P.M.—midnight, midnight—3 A.M., 3 A.M.—6 A.M. [vigil = *watchful*.]  
**vīginti**, card. adj., *twenty*.  
**vincō**, -īre, -nxī, -nctum, v. a., *bind*.  
**vincō**, -ere, vīcī, *victum*, v. a., *conquer, surpass*.

**vinctus**, -a, -um, part. of *vinciō*.  
**vinculum, vinclum**, -i, n., *chain, bond*. [vincō.]  
**virtūs**, -ūtis [vir], f., *manliness; courage, bravery, valor, prowess*.  
**vīs**, acc. vim, abl. vī, pl. vīrēs, -īum, f., *strength; force, violence; influence*. Pl., *physical powers, strength*.  
**visus**, see **videō**.  
**vīta**, -ae, f., *life*.  
**vītō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1), *shun, avoid, try to escape*.  
**vix**, adv., *with difficulty, scarcely*.  
**vocō** (1), *call, summon*.  
**Vocontii**, -ōrum, m., *the Vocontii*.  
**volō**, velle, volū, —, irr., *be willing, wish, desire; mean, intend*.  
**voluntās**, -ātis [volō], f., *will, wish, inclination, desire; goodwill, affection* (i. 19); *consent*. *ēius voluntāte*, *with his consent* (i. 7).  
**vōs**, nom. and acc. pl. [tū], *you*.  
**vulgus** (volg-), -i, n., *the multitude, public, rabble*.  
**vulnerō** (vol-) (1), *wound, injure*.  
**vulnus** (vol-), -neris, n., *a wound*.



# A New Beginners' Latin Book.

By J. C. Hoch, Ph.D., and O. F. H. Bert, B.S.

This new Beginners' Latin Book is constructed on a plan that will enable the beginner to accomplish the *maximum amount of work* within the *minimum space* of time.

1. Exceptions to rules have, for the most part, been omitted, since the aim is to teach the *essentials* of the language.

2. Many of the sentences are original, while those of more complex construction have been taken from classic authors; all have been chosen with the aim to *interest* the student as well as to *illustrate* the rules of syntax and to pave the way for reading Cæsar.

3. The words which make up the vocabulary are such as will prove to be of value in later study. Five *review lessons* in vocabulary have been introduced.

4. The subjunctive mood and its uses has received most careful treatment.

5. The discussion of conditional sentences by means of a diagram is a *new feature* which teachers will appreciate.

The fables and other stories which are commonly found in other beginners' Latin books are omitted since ample material for reading is supplied in the text.

The lessons are arranged in a *natural and methodical order* and are just the *right length* to enable a class to make *rapid progress*.

We shall be glad to send a copy of this book for inspection. Price, \$1.00.

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers,

New York City.

# A New Beginners' Greek Book.

By *I. F. Frisbee, Ph.D.*

This new Beginners' Greek Book is modeled from the standpoint of the *learner*. The pupil is required to *think out* everything for himself.

1. *Its paradigms* contain only the *most common words* of Xenophon's *Anabasis*. In their selection preference has been regularly given to *root words*.
2. *Its sentences* for the exposition of the syntax are taken intact from the *Anabasis*, and are expressed in the familiar language of the student. Those sentences with inflectional forms are accompanied by brief critical observations, especially suited to young pupils.
3. *Its vocabulary* contains a special list of the most common words of the *Anabasis*.
4. *Its formation of words* deals with the most common words of the pupil's vocabulary.
5. *Its inflectional forms* are classified according to their natural relations; for example—the vowel declensions are treated together, and the verb is developed with its three voices in the order of those forms most common in Greek.

There are *many other features* besides these which we think will appeal to you.

Those who have used the book in the class room, write us, that—"for *logical arrangement* and *scientific treatment* of the fundamental principles of Greek it has no equal." The lessons are so arranged that even the dullest pupils can make *rapid advancement*. Would you be interested to see a copy of this book? *Price, \$1.25.*

**HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers,**

**New York City.**

# Idioms of Caesar

## Cicero's Idioms

Complete, with English equivalents. Alphabetically arranged for ready reference, or for serial memorizing \*

---

EACH—Price 25 cents—PAPER

---

BY JOACHIM C. MUELLER

PROF. OF LATIN, CALVIN COLLEGE, CLEVELAND, OHIO

---

The two pamphlets cover, respectively, the GALLIC WAR, and the 4 ORATIONS *vs.* CATILINE; and besides the Latin idioms done into correct English, each pamphlet also contains an English-Latin index to help the pupil put English idioms into classical Latin.

These handy books are published in the belief that nothing in the study of the Latin is harder for the average beginner than to render the idioms accurately and well.

The suggestion offered by the compiler of these exceedingly convenient lists, is that the teacher assign say ten idioms for each recitation, and that the pupils memorize them and also form sentences illustrating the idioms—developing a surprising facility in sensing the drift of the text.

This plan has been so successfully employed by the compiler in his own classes beginning Latin, for whom these lists were prepared, that he has in preparation similar lists of the idioms of other classic Latin writers.

---

**HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers of**

Completely Parsed Cæsar, BOOK I, \$1.50

Shortest Road to Cæsar. For beginners. 75 cents

Interlinear Translation of Cæsar, \$1.50

Literal Translation Cæsar, 50 cents

31-33-35 West 15th Street,

New York City.

*Schoolbooks of All Publishers at One Store.*

German  
Texts  
With  
Vocabularies

and explanatory footnotes printed on good paper, bound in cloth, price 50c per volume. The following texts are now ready:  
Schiller's Wilhelm Tell, Schiller's Der Neffe als Onkel, Lessing's Minna von Barnhelm, Lessing's Nathan der Weise, Lessing's Emilia Galotti, Goethe's Hermann und Dorothea, Schiller's Jungfrau von Orleans

Schiller's Maria Stuart

Others in preparation.

What texts will you read next term? Would you be interested to see any of the above? Correspondence invited.

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers

31-33-35 WEST 15TH STREET, NEW YORK CITY

*Schoolbooks of all publishers at one store*

**Songs of All the Colleges.** *New ed. contains the Boola!*  
*A welcome gift in any home!* Everyone likes a college song, and this book is an ideal gift to place on the piano for one's friends to enjoy, even though one sings not himself. *Words and music throughout.* \$1.50.

*New edition* with 104 songs added for 67 other colleges. Over seventy college presidents have purchased this volume to have at their homes, for the students on social occasions. *Fourteen editions* have gone into many thousands of homes. If you have a piano but do not play, the PIANOLA and other "piano-players" will play many of these songs for you and your friends to sing.

Compiled by college men, endorsed by college presidents, 'rah'-rah'd by college students, brothered by college alumni, sistered by college alumnae, adopted and programed by college glee clubs everywhere; by local clubs, choral societies, and singing classes. Contains all the dear old familiar songs, as well as the popular new songs typical of *alma mater* in colleges east, west, south, north. Many old favorite tunes with new catchy, up-to-date words — serious, sentimental, humorous; also the 'rah, 'rah kind. Yalemen know, and the *New Haven Union* says: "The question of what in the world to give a friend is solved by the publication of *Songs of ALL THE COLLEGES*, which is suitable alike for the collegian of the past, for the student of the present, and for the boy (or girl) with hopes, also for the music-loving sister and a fellow's best girl!" Another college paper: "*They ring true!*" Says the Principal of a famous private school: "*It incites to college.*" Durable cloth.

**Songs of the Western Colleges.** Durable cloth binding, \$1.25.

**Songs of the Eastern Colleges.** Novel, durable cloth, \$1.25.

These two books present an ideally complete portrayal of the musical and social side, the joyous side, of the student life in our Western and Eastern colleges respectively. Plenty of the old favorites of all colleges, while crowded with the new songs.

To own *all three* above books is to possess the most complete, the most adequate illustration ever attempted of this phase of the genius, the spirit of Young America.

**New Songs for College Glee Clubs.** Paper. 50 cents. Twenty humorous hits, besides others, sentimental and serious. Not a selection but has been sung by some glee club locally to the delight of an "encoring audience."

Glee Club leaders will appreciate a collection every piece in which, by the severe test of both rehearsal and concert, is *right* — the musical notation, the harmony of the voice parts, the syllabification, the rhythm, the rhyme, the instrumentation, and last, but not least with audiences, the *catchiness*.



**College Men's 3-Minute Declamations.** Up-to-date selections from live men like Chauncey Depew, Hewitt, Gladstone, Cleveland, Presidents Eliot (Harvard), and Carter (Williams), and others. New material with vitality in it for prize speaking. *Very popular. Ninth edition. \$1.00.*



**College Maids' 3-Minute Readings.** Up-to-date recitations from living men and women. On the plan of the popular College Men's 3-minute Declamations, and on the same high plane. *7th edition. \$1.00.*

**Pieces for Prize Speaking Contests. Volume I.** Over one hundred pieces that have *actually taken prizes* in prize speaking contests. *5th edit. Successful. \$1.25.*

**Pieces for Prize Speaking Contests. Vol. II.** 3d ed. *\$1.25.*

**Pieces for Every Occasion.** Including "special days." *Something new, \$1.25.*

**Handy Pieces to Speak.** Single pieces and dialogues. Primary, 20 cts.; Intermediate, 20 cts.; Advanced, 20 cts. *All three for 50 cts.* On separate cards. 108 selections in all.

**Acme Declamation Book.** Single pieces and dialogues. For boys and girls of all ages; all occasions. Paper, 30 cts.; cloth, 50 cts. *Many editions sold.*



**Pros and Cons.** Complete debates of the affirmative and negative of the stirring questions of the day. *A decided hit.* This is another book invaluable not only to high-school and college students, but also to every other person who aspires to converse engagingly on the topics of the day. Our foreign policy, the currency, the tariff, immigration, high license, woman suffrage, penny postage, transportation, trusts, department stores, municipal ownership of franchises, government control of telegraph.

*Both sides of these and many other questions completely debated. Directions for organizing and conducting debating society, with by-laws and parliamentary rules. No other book like it. Enlarged ed. \$1.50.*



**The Best American Orations of To-day.** \$1.25. *New.*

**How to Attract and Hold an Audience.** Every clergyman, every lawyer, every teacher, every man or woman occupying an official position, every citizen and every youth who is likely ever to have occasion in committee, or in public, to enlist the interest, to attract and hold the attention of one or more hearers, and *convince* them—every person who ever has to, or is likely to have to “speak” to one or more listeners will find in our new book a clear, concise, *complete* handbook which will enable him to *succeed!* 4th edition. \$1.00.

Thorough, concise, methodical, replete with common sense, complete—these words describe fitly this new book; and in his logical method, in the crystal-like lucidity of his style, in his forceful, incisive, penetrating mastery of his subject, the author has at one bound placed himself on a plane with the very ablest teacher-authors of his day. Fourth edition *within its first year!*

**Commencement Parts.** “Efforts” for all occasions.

Orations, addresses, valedictories, salutatories, class poems, class mottoes, after-dinner speeches, flag days, national holidays, class-day exercises. *Models* for every possible occasion in high-school and college career, every one of the “efforts” being what some fellow has *stood on his feet* and actually delivered on a similar occasion—not what the compiler *would say* if he should happen to be called on for an ivy song or a response to a toast, or what not; but what the fellow himself, when his turn came, *did say!* Invaluable, indispensable to those preparing any kind of “effort.” Unique. \$1.50.



**Readings from the Popular Novels.** \$1.00. *New.*

**New Dialogues and Plays.** Life-like episodes from popular authors like Stevenson, Crawford, Mark Twain, Dickens, Scott, in the form of simple plays, with every detail explained as to dress, make-up, utensils, furniture, etc. For schoolroom or parlor. \$1.50.

**A Southern Speaker.** Selections from the orations, addresses, and writings of the best known Southern orators, Southern statesmen and authors. \$1.00.

**Reading. A Well-Planned Course.** \$1.00. By Caroline B. Le Row, compiler of “*Pieces for Every Occasion*.” There has long been wanted a book of *new selections* for classes, with lessons on the art of reading.

**How to Study Literature.** A novel, a poem, a history, a biography, a drama, an oration, a sermon, or any other literary production, if read or studied as this book tells one how to read and study, becomes a subject which one can discuss or write about in a thoroughly intelligent and comprehensive way. Enables you to talk about a book as if you had really *sized it up* completely. Just the thing for literary societies, reading circles, the casual reader, as well as for teacher and pupil; also for any one who desires to retain a symmetrical impression of the books he reads.

*Five editions in first five months.* 75 cents. *New.*

**Rhetoric.** A new textbook. By M. L. Radford. \$1.00. **Who's Who in Mythology?** 1000 *mythological* characters briefly described. Identifies and locates *instanter* every god and goddess, hero and myth that are likely to be broached either in conversation, sermon, song, drama, painting or statuary. 75 cents.

**Who's Who in History?** 1000 *classical* characters and allusions briefly explained. Locates the places, identifies the persons, describes the things, which are constantly alluded to in literature, on the rostrum and platform, in sermons, in paintings, in sculpture and in conversation. 75 cents.

**What Shall I Do?** 50 profitable occupations. \$1.00. **Going to College. Says The Evangelist:** "Glow with the enthusiasm of a high ideal. We wish it could be in the library of every high school, seminary, and academy in the land." *Inspiring!* 50 cents.

**The Scholar's A B C of Electricity.** Can you explain the simple phenomena of electricity? Do you hate to appear ignorant of the very simplest facts regarding the telephone, the telegraph, the electric light, the dynamo, the trolley? This book states the facts in clear words devoid of technicalities, and in entertaining style. No need to study or commit to memory; just to read it is to understand. 50 cents.

**Lessons on Practical Subjects.** Of public interest. 50 cents.

**Lessons on Manners.** Mrs. Dewey. 75 cents.

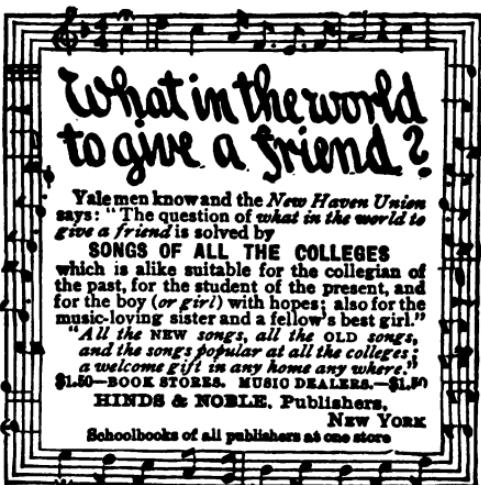
**Lessons on Morals.** Mrs. Dewey. 75 cents.

**The Virtues and their Reasons.** Every-day ethics for school and home. Guide for parent and teacher. \$1.00.

**Character Building.** Inspiring suggestions. \$1.00.

**Bookkeeping Blanks** at *50 cents per set.* Five blank books to the set. Adapted for use with any text-book, —Elem., Practical, or Com. School. *Used everywhere.*

**Bookkeeping and Science of Accounts.** Robertson. \$1.20



# What in the world to give a friend?

Yale men know and the *New Haven Union* says: "The question of *what in the world to give a friend* is solved by

## SONGS OF ALL THE COLLEGES

which is alike suitable for the collegian of the past, for the student of the present, and for the boy (*or girl*) with hopes; also for the music-loving sister and a fellow's best girl."

"All the NEW songs, all the OLD songs,  
and the songs popular at all the colleges;  
a welcome gift in any home any where."

\$1.50—BOOK STORES. MUSIC DEALERS.—\$1.50

**HINDS & NOBLE.** Publishers,

NEW YORK

Schoolbooks of all publishers at one store







Digitized by Google

